# The 

## Terms of Use

The following is a digital reproduction of an existing historical document. It has been scanned and converted into Portable Document Format (PDF) for the purpose of making it freely available to the public.

You are welcome to redistribute unaltered copies of this document via electronic means. You may not, however, alter the document without permission nor profit from its redistribution.

To download other works in the Collection, and for more information, please visit:

## THE

## SCHOOLE OF THE NOBLE and W orthy Sciense of Defence.

Being the firt of any Englifh 'mans inucntion, which profeffed the fiyd Science; So plainly deficribed, that any man may quickly
come to the truc knowledge of their weapons, with fmall paines and little practifc.
Then reade it aduifedly, and vfe the benefit thereof when occafion fhat ferue, fo fhat thou be a good Connmon-wealth man, line happy to thy feffe, aud comfortable to thy friend.
Alfominy other good and profirable Preccopts and Cornyels for the managing of Quervole andordering thy felfe in many yotbr matters.
Writen by Iosmpa Svutnam.


LOKDON,
PrintedhyNacholas Oxas. x6ro.
 MIGHTIE PRINCE CHARLES, PRINCE OF WALES, DVKE OI CORNE-
wale, Yorke, Albany aned Rothefay, Marques of Or-
mount, Earle of Roffe, and Bitron of Armitwoch, high
Senefchal of Scotland, Lord of the lites,
and Krighl of bie mofl Noble arder


Oft Gracious and No-
ble Prince, the many great and kinde fanours whicb / receined from the bands of your late Brother deceafed, vnto whom I was tutor in the skill of weapons, to my no little credit, wobicb makes me now turne backe to blew my loue in a fmall meafure onto your Princely felfes, and yet it is as much as 1 amable, abunchofgrapes is but a fíall prefent, and yet King Philip of MaceeA 2 don

## The Epiflle Dedicatory.

 don a.d receiue them, and accept them, and the rather, becaule a poore man prefented them, and therefore $f$ trult your Highneffe will more efeeme the good-will of the giver, then the value of the gift.Three things did chiefly encourage me to publifh it vnder the glorious name of your gracious Higbneffe: The firf is, in regard of your Bighneffe deepe defire to gaine experience in all Arts and Sciences, the wbich is fene by your Graces fauouring and furtbering any man which is endued with any good quality, therein rigbly refembling a branch of the fame Stocke from whence your. Excellency Brang, of whomL in my nexl Epifle to the Reader Iwill /peake more at large : But at this time for doube of beeing offenfiue, mith the reneming of olde griefes, $I$ fiandinau, maze, like poto that childe, mbat

The Epinle Dedicatory. who being asked whetber be loued bis futber or bis motber beft, ftood mute as doubting bow to an-wer for feare of dipleafing the one of them : cuen fo in thisplace will 7 . Som the fecond caufe of this my Dedication unto your Excellency is, in repect of my vebement loue wherto in duty Iam bound Unto your Princely felfe: and tbirilly, that it may paffe under your Higlonefs protection, the better to fhroud it felfe from backe-biters and faultfinders, leaft amongt fucb it be takenvp like afriendleffe vagarant: Ob therefore let it find fawour, 9 bumbly intreate your Higbneffe, altbough it con little pleafure your Prancely felfe, yet it may fead many otbers, and fo doubting leaflif baue troubled your Highneffe ouer long. I will therefore beere drawe the (iurtaines, and commit your Highneffe to the Protection of the Almighity, who euer bleffe, A3. preferue,

# The Epitle Dedicatory. preferue and keepe your Highneffe with tong life, and properous bealth, and bappineffe to the worlds end. 

By your Highneffe so be
=ommanded folong as

I liue.
Ioleph Swetnam,


Can Epifle vnto the common Reader.


Nietting out of a booke, friendly Reader, this I know, that there is no beter a thing to be oblerued then order, for exceptincre be an order in all chings, all runnech oo confufion, bue what doe I meane walke of orders, which am no Scholler, nor haue no learning; but only a liecle expericuce, which God and nature hach beltowedypon me. As it is vapoifible en build a Chuch withour !yme or ftone, no more can a workman worke without tooles, yer to anoide idleneffe, fomthag I will make of it, although I cannot make is found to fo grodatune as I would, for want of learning, for I was nener at Oxford but while I baited my horfe; nor at Cambridge but while one Stsubthidge faire lafted : wherefore if you doe examine unce concerning learning, I hall anfwer you as the fellow did the gentleman, who asking him the way to London, a poke full of phumbes fir laid he; or as he which came from a Scrinon was afked what he heardethere; he faid it was a good Scrmon, and he Preacher fpake well, but he could not tell one word what hee faid, no more can I anfwer one word ichollec-like or according tolearning ; yet both at Oxford and Cambridge I looked ypon the Seliollers, and they looked vpon ine, and io I became a little the older, but neuer the wifer ; wherefore if I Oould continue tempering this booke folong till I had put it in order, I hould acfemble shofe, which doc make cheir apparell folong of the newelf falhion, vatil they are quice out offafhion, or like as the fidlers doe their itrings, who wrett thein and temper them fo long, vatill they bring them out of all time, tune, and realon, Icaft I hould doc io I will ict it goc with this drafte as it is : bue gentle Reader looke not hecreto gather grapes of thornes, nur figs of thittles : nor of a wild and a barren tree, nothing elfe bue
wilde

## The Epifle eo the Reader.

wilde endbarren fruir, yet amongag duft, Cometimes there are pearles found, and in hard rockes gold and nones of greac price, I haue hecre as it were mixed wheat and rye, barlye and oates, Beanes and Peafe altogether, now take a littie paines to feparate that graine which thou likeft beff for thine owne benefit. I giue thee here a friendly caucar, to prepare thy felfo in a readines, for although thou art at guiet now, yet doft thou not know how foone thou halt be vrged to take weapons in hand, as my felfe and many others haue beene, when I leaft thought vpon if, therefore to kue iudgement and skillin weapons is good, although thou neuer hanc occafion to vfe it. The Prouerbe faith cunning is no burthen, the fame mouth which at one time faith, I will liue quietly, for I will make no brawles with any, yet at another time he again will fay, ola that I had skill, for then wold lbee reuenged on fuch a one that hath iniurioufly wronged ine. Therfore for fuch a caufe be prepared before hand, tor if the King were fure chat he fhould nener lane wars, what neede had he then to prouide armour and weapons, bue in the time of peace hec prouideth himfelfe ; the wife Mariner pronides in a calme for a forme, for things doubtfull are to be dreadfull. It is better to liue in feare then in fecurity, and to this purpofe Tully hath a prety faying which gocth thus; bre which defreth peace les bimprowide for wars, but I feare mee that the tyde will be feent, before $I$ can double this point, and thereforc here I will calt anchor, and will ride in this rode fomething longer then I would, for feare leaft I calt my barke away on a lee thore, for want of water; thefe words of watineffe doe I vfe becaufe there are many which no fooner out of the Giell, but are calt away like an addle egge.
Therefore I would not haue yong fprigs fpoiled in the blofome, I meane I would not hate yong branches or young entereres into the world imbarke chemfelues in the hip of fooles, for feare leaft they caft themfelues away in a manncr, before they laue had any beginning, for I hauc knowen many blafted in the budding in a manner, before they came to know cheefefrom chalke:onely for wane of inftruction, and likewife fome againe hate perifhed, andyet not for want of inftruction, bue they hauc knowen what was good for them, and yet would nor feek
t, but hauc delaid the meanes, as many delay their repentance, till the lated day, or tillit be too late, not much valike a lug. gard, which rowfing himfelfe, and looking abroad in the morning, he feeth that it is high time to rife, yec Alugginhly he lyech downe againc to llecpe, and fo forgetteth hinfelfe ; cuen fo many perinh, fome for want of good counfell, and fome for lacke of forecafting a mifchiefe before is doe light vpon them. It is faid that we mult not cempt God, Math.4. but I hold it a cempting of God to prefume wholly vpon him for all occafions what foeuer, without feeking other meanes which is commonly known, and by God prepared for vs; as if we were ficke men we oughe to take the Phylitians counhell, and it wounded we mult seeke for helpe of a Chyrurgian, if our houfe be on fire we mult powre on water, and if we fall in a ditch, we muft not lye ftill withour vfing other meanes befides, faying God helpe vs, but for this and all other things God hath appointed meanes, we mult feek and then no doubr God will gitue his blefling with it, but wee mult not prefunc how aredchy focuer we line, or how defuerately focuer we dye, nothing can hinder vs of our faluation, bue So far dececiued I feare me are fuch, that there is a thunderbole of mifchicte prepared for their ignoräce herein. Our Sauior Chrift would not piefune fo much of the mercy of God the Father, as when her was ypon the pinacle to caft himfelfe downe, but hee cand downe by other meanes, for the fayres were inade for the purpofe; Goxd he fathermight otherwife hanc faucd Noas without any Atke if it had pleaifedhim, but Noth had warning that fuch a thing flouldbe, whereupon he fought a meancs to faue himfelfe by making the Arke, therefore he that will not be preparedbefore hand with oyle in his Lampe, or with skill in his weapons, when there is meanes to be found, he may be fhut out of heauen as the fiuc foolifh virgins were if hee chance to bee flaine fuddenly, as many a man hath been, by dying without repentance.

Indeed if there were no meanes then if we did with humblenefle come vnto God, no doubt then I fay bur God would miraculoufly defend his feruants, as hee did the children of Ifracl when their enemics were behind them, and the red fea before them, then there wasno meanes nor helpe left chem, but only in

## The Epiflle to the Reader.

the Lord, but then the Lord fopped not his eares nor thortned not his armes, but gave thens paffage with his outfretched arm thorow the red fea, and then againe they being in the wilderneffe, there was neither meate nor drinke, and then and there againe the Lord feut then foode from heauen, and he alfo made the hard rockes gulh foorth riucrs of water. The Mariner in difreffe throweth ouer boord the Marchants goods which are in thip, and yec then finding timall hope of life he cutteth dowa the mafts of the thip, and fo he throw eth them and the fayles ouerboord, which fould be the oncly meane to bring them to land, but then thefe Mariners being berefi of al hope, they rely wholly apon God, which neuer Ieaueth in diffeefic thofe which trult in him, but then he miraculoully doth defend then, and bring them into a lafe harbor contrary vnto mans expectation.
So notonely here in this place, but as I goe on I will fhew fome examples out of the booke of God and from the Philofophers and other Schoole men, and the application to be applied vintoourfelues, for there is nothing written but hathbeene written for out learning, and of thofe we are to learne counfell of which haue runne through the brambles, briers, and the mil: chiefe of the world.

Then be not wife in thine owne conceit, for S. Toln and Paul faith that the wife are catched in their owne craftineffe. Iobng. 13.1 Cor.3.19.If the wife are catched what then will become of the ignorant and foalifh, not onely of thes proteffion, but of all others; for there are many of all trades which doe thinke their owne wirbelt, and hating to bee reformed, but I wifh fuch to take hecde of ignorance pitfall, Icalt they fallinto the fpringle with the woodcocke; for who is fo bold as blind bayard. But as fome men of all trades with fmall skill doe goe on and liue by their trades and yet in a manner but botchers, euca fo I haue often hard many a man lay, that with a little skill they haue faued their liues being put vnto tryall, for thofe which are in danger of drowning will catch at a fraw to faue ther liues, but for the moft part it fo fallech out, that if the father or the malter be a coward, or vnskilfull in his weapons, then the fennes of that Father or the fertants of that Mafter, © ldome prooue good foldiers,not much ralike that faying of the Propher whea the mo-

## 7 he Epifle to the Keader.

ther is an Hitite, and the Father an Ammorite, the child feldome proours an Ifraelite. Ezekiel 45 . Then we mult not follow or goe on being Jed on blindfoldly, by a cowardly fort of people, which will fay that a good cyc or a good heart is all that belongs wato the defence of a mans body, thele are they which profefling themelues to be wife, are become fooles. Romir. 22. Or they may be compared vito thofe which talke of Robin bood and yee neuce fhot in his bow, fo this trumpe haue I calt in your way, for loath I am to leanc you any farting holes to wind out

Then flew at, but that youmay kecpe the high beaten way, leaft in fecking worfy folfe by-wayes you wander quite out of the way,yet miftake me not beatt, for buat in thinking that hereby I feeme to hale thee on for thy owne lane wit to good like abeat, for I doe bur load hes with the cords oflone find nut sence good, like a bealt, for I doe but lead thee with the cords of loue, dies to coucs and wifh the to tafte of this my opinion which I have new cheir griefe. broached. And I make no doubt but in tryall it will be no whit diftafting vnoo thee, for by experience l fpeake is that aboue all, skill is the key of the worke, as the eye to the body, or as the Captaine to the fouldiets, or the Pilot to the fhip; if the eye bee darke in walking, the body falleth, if the Capraine be ignorant, then doe the Souldiers march diforderly, or if the Pilot bee vnskilfull, the fhip failes in danger, but as I was about to tell you of a fort of logger-headed affes which further more will perfwade their familiar friends, by telling then chat skill will doe them no good, for when they fauc learned skill and afterwards when they Ghall haue occafion to vfe their weapons, then fuch dunces will fay that skill will be forgoten \& little thoughtypon. Alfo they fay that a man with a foord will cut off thy rapies at one blow, but I fay chis is a moft cowardly kind of ignoräce, for if a skilfull man doe hold the rapicr, it is not a hundred blows with a fword can doe a rapier any harme, no although they light vpon him. Thercfore thofe which will perfwade any from learning skill with weapons, for the defence of their bodies, may fitly becompared viro the fallie Prophets amonglt the Iewes, which periwaded them that they fhould not fearenothing, but peace, peace,peace, when the Aflyrians were in a readinefle to cut their throats as in the 6 of leremy the 14 , there you may read it, therefore a provident care oughe to bee had, as /ehofaphat did when he feared the Moabits to come vponhim, 2 Chron.20.3.

## The Epiftle to the Reader.

Danidliued fecurely in Ierwfalem, and without feare, which made him forget God, as in the 2.Sam.i r the whole Chapter is worth che reading; doth not the wifeft man that cuer wrote fay, that there is a time of war and a time of peace, Eccle. 3 . 8 . If a man did know what howre the theefe would come, he would lurcly watch, wherefore be aduifed to deale wifely, but not like vnto Pbaraob for he faid, let vs deale wifely when he deale moff foolifhly, Exodus I, io, and fo we will goc on.

In reading oucr diuers Hyftories I thercby vnderfanding the noble acts, and allo noting the manly mind of theie who liued many hundred yeeres agoe, whole fame fhall neuer dye, whereas cowardly daftards which neuer bene their Audies in marfhall exploits, fuch I fay at their death their fame dyeth with them, and fo they are quickly raked vp in the afhes of forgetfulneffe, and buried in the valley of obliuion. So that if a man wold goe fearch for the pedigree of their gentility, they fhall finde it laid vp in a beggars box,or as the Charter of a City written in duft, whereas on the other fide the valiant and gallant minded men, although they dye, yet in their life time their manly acts and valiaut deedes which they worthily performed, fome in the warres and lome at fingle combat, and fome at other honorable and laudable exercifes, whereby they nerited tothemfelues inmortall fame for cuer, for to fome no exercife nor weapon came amiffe as in ftead of many examples thete two out of the book of God hall be fufficient, Dassid with his fling, (as Hercules with his Club)and Sampfon with his Iaw-bone or any other weapon which came nexc to his hand, but loch I amn to trouble you with Go loug an Epifte or Preface, yet for an Introduction to the relt fomething I inult fay and molt of that which I haue and will fay is fo neceflary as the reft, although it be longer then I would, but we will now to the mater.

Then thus, by reafon of diuers errors which are in fundry mens teaching of this noble atte of defence, I therefore being pricked forward by the earnelt requelt of fome of iny friends, to defcribe the rules of weapons, which I by my ftudy haue inuented, and by practife brought to perfection, and likewife for my countries benefit, I meane to better the vnskilfull in knowlodge, I haue thought it good to open plainly the beit grounds,
which

## The Epifle to the Reader.

which belongeth to our Englifh weapons, that are now in vfe, fo far as my fimple inuention by great practice hath attained vnto. Another reafon which moued me hercunto was where fome doc find out many hidden fectets which they bury in the earthagaine with their bodies, or elfe if they make is known, it fhall bee to fuch a faithfull friend as they lone and affect dearely, all writers that cucr wrote did write either for profic orpleafure: fome to profit others, and founc to pleafure themfelues; and fome haue wrote common and neceflary things for their owne pofterity afier them ; I write bur of common things, yet not fo common as neceflary, and therefore my meaning is to make my fecret fudy known fo phanly as I can vinto all the world, for the benefit of many thoufand yet vaborne, for cuery man hath or fhould haue skillin his weapons, the reafons thall follow, as occafion hall ferue hereafer more at large; but as yet I know the greatelt number are blinded in an ignorane conceit, 1 meane fuch as doe thinke to ouercome their enemics if occalion doc ferue by quickneffe of the cye, or by a kind of valorons refolution, which for the anoiding of this and fuch like abufes, Ihaue here and there put downe fundry reafons in this booke, although they be not in order, yer calke a litetle paines to feeke them out, for I wrote this booke at fuch leafurable fits as time would permit me; now for affection lake fome will fay it is well d ne, and others againe will fay it is ceafomable and indifferent, and fo I pray you let it paffe, for if I hoold perocius it frold goe for flarke nought, thenfhould I account iny time and labor very ill beftowed; but yee this 1 know, if it were ten times woric then it is, yet would it be weleom to a number of my olld fiends and familiar acquaintance, fuchas were the caufe of this my idle time fpending, who were carneft with me for the ferting foorth of this worke. Lo this is the anchor whereon my hope dependeth, but yet I make a doube leaft that my booke may light into the hands of fome cnuious mates, who neucr knew inc, yet will not lticke to fay yponthe very firf fight, oh this is fuch a mans worke, I know well enough what hee conld doe, and yet will not fully giue yp their verdir, but onely fake the head, with a wrymouth and a fmiling countenance, throwing it from them, and fo feeming by their filence that they could furcher
$A_{3}$
difigrace

## The Epiflle to the Reader.

difgrace mee, but will not. Indeed it is a more eafier matter for fuch to find fauls with a part of my booke then to amend the whole, but I could wifh fuch learne before they take upon them to coneroule, bur thofe which are wife and kind, will accept of my good will, for I have giuen out this but as a theame; let a wifer then I rime vpon if, and although it fecme but as it were a glimpie of the noble Art of defeuse, in tegard of the fubftance, yet fome will perceiue day at a little hole; wherefore trauell further in it, till you find out the fubflance, like a good Surgion fearch the wound to the bottome before thou lay a plafter, I meane reade it ouer before thou give iudgenent; and then play the wife mans part which is to feeake litile, although he thinke much;indeed I muft confeffe a vanity in my felfe and that I haue deferued blame, becaufe fo bluntly i hane fet foorth fuch an vnperfe $\mathcal{A}$ peece of worke, but my reafons in the later end of the book may a litle excufe nee, but in the mean while let it be neuer the worfe welcome vatothee, for that it hatb my poore name vnto is, I peake this becaufe I know there are fome will feeake they care not what, to difgrace they know not whom, withour rendring any reafon at all, but onely out of a dogged humor, or an idle braine,fome finding fault with the gards, and fome becaufe I haue written of things which belongeth not to the mat-eer or ground of this worke, and fome becaule it is a booke of pithrres,accounting a book of pictures fit for children and fouls; to anfwer fuch I fay when a child or a foole doth looke in a glaffe, he doth thinke there is a baby on the other fide, but when men of difcretion looke in a glaffe, they do not thinke fo;therefore as by the Heathen we may learne many good leffons, cuen So a man of vnderfanding may learne wifedome, and gaine experience of a foole; I wrote not this altogether to pleafure thofe that are skilfull already, for this booki can fteed them but little, for the whole and found need not a Phyfition, but the ignorant and vnskilfull may profit by this booke as much if with difcretion they take regard in their practife according to my direction, as if nuy felfe were in perfon to teach them, but both the skilfull, and vaskilfull, the wife and the foolifh may here learne one leflon or other, which they neuer learned before; yet I know not how cuery one will take this my prefumption, in aduenturing

## The Epifle to the Reader

to fet out a book having no learning, yet I pray yourcade it oner firft, and chen iudge, but yet be flow in condeming mee, for 1 haue done my good will, now he which can make a fample thing beter, he ought fo to handle the matter, that alchough he get credie himfolfe, yer.condemne not me for flacwing the beft 1 could; therefore fo indge of mee behind my backe as you would haue ether eindge of you, but if you ing ge well and like well ofit, then flatl you haue the fecond part with fix weapons more, bue I will firt fee what will become of his firlt part, ler it commend or condemine it felfe, for grear braggers cannot betrer it, nor dififmbling fipeches impaire it, weither will I mantaine for well done, ail that I haue done, but if you accept it then I haue all my delire, if otherwife good will hall beare the blame for my prefumption: but why doe I make a dought of any euill fpeches, which deferus noblame, againe this I know that there is none which ftandeth in fo much need of good words as chofe which goe abour to coner difhoncft deeds, wherefore I may fay as that great Captainc Maytas who hating occalion to vfe a Soeech before the people of Rome, in his conclufionhee faid, although my words are not well fet in order I waigh not fo much fo that my deeds be good.
I haue made this of bricke and fones, as Auguftus faid of Rome at the firf, but now Rome is buile with matbic : euen fo I wold winthat fone expertand leatied perfon or other would pull downe this rude bergun worke of mine and build it yp with marble, for the worke it felfe if it were workmanlike handled, deferueth to be written in leters of gold, and to remain for eucr but firf it muld be twice or thrice diftilled as they do their Rofafolis, for firt it is Aquavitx, Bx then in the fecond and thind diAtilation, there is beltowed greater charge and more excellent matter arifch of it.

I haue but roued at skill in weapons, yet am fure that I hauc flot fo necre the marke that fone will account me for agood Archer, otherwift they would neuer haue beene fe inportant with me to haue ne put my directions in writing, and when it was in writing fo many defired Copies, that anongft fo many friends I knew not which to pleafure firft, but efpecially and aboue all the late high and mighty Prince Henry whom I well
hoped

## The Epiflle to sbe Reader.

hoped that he Chould haue liued to hauc beene the ninth Hemy and the tenth worthy of the world, for what did any of the 0 . ther nine worthies doe, but this good Prince was as likely, if he had liued to haue performed as much as any of them ; for what hath beene done bur may be done againe. Bur as I was about to fay, hhis good Prince had the pertuling of this book and earnefly periwaded me to print ir, bur I had not leifure tofinifh it before death vntimely tooke hinn away to my griefe and many more, for all the whole king dome was nothing but mourning. Death were kind if he tooke none, but thofe which offended, but oh moft vnkind death, for thou in taking away that good yong Prince, haft caken away him which acuer offended, for there was neuer the like feene in one foy ong, for his wifedome, learning, and kind curtefie, to all which cane to fee his Princely felfe, talking fo mildly and familiariy to euery one which did fo reioyce and glad the hearts of all true and louing fubiefts, and allo caufed him in his fame to be fpoken of, for Kings and Princes are calked of at poore mens sables, and good words he deferued, as euer any earthly creature did. For befides bis skill in Muficke, hice was able by his learning to diccourfe with any forraine Prince whatfoeuer, alfo his admirabie and well riding of a great horfe, and his excellent running at tilt or ring; likewifc his cunning in weapons, for the fight on horfsbacke or on foote, and for toffing the pike neuer fo many frates feenc in any Prince, infomuch that it made Atrangers ftand amazed to behold him; at a word hee had experience in all artes or fciences, thereby feeming as it were defirous to truft more to his owne valour, if occafion ferued, then to the goodueffe of his horfe. And fo to make an cnd leaft of the ignorant I gee the name of a claw-blacke, and alfo another doubt I haue, leaft vndertaking fo difficulte a taske, and being not able to difcharge it according vito the dignity and worthinefle thereof, the which I cannot doe, and therefore I will not wade fo far in fod dangerous a riuer, but that I may eafily efcape out, wherefore like the finger of a diall I will point, it nulf be the clocke which rellech you the iuft time of the day, I haue drawne his Highneffe in bare colours, and fo I leaue the oily colours vnto thofe which are learned, you may fee by a taft what wine is in the butte, and io

## The Epjolle so the Reader.

no our matter againe. Now he which will practic after my direction, thou maif aliete the rather atcaine vnto that perfeet Enowledge in the Art or skill with thy weapons hauing all able body by agility to preferuc that skill which I haue here in this booke laid open vnto thee, for I did vnderfand many things which my body was not able to performe; now becaute many at the firft will waxe weary in their practife, yee fucch wearinefic is ouercome by often excreife, and that new skillonce obtained will be fuch a pleaffure to thee, that is putcech all wea- Giue not over rineffe out of thy remembrance, now vntill thou hat skill thou pratife ner muft not thinke it a toyle, but friuc continually to ouercome reied not will wearineffe:refolue this with thy felfe, that the paine will be no- canf not bea thing fo wearifome as the gaine of skill will be delightfult and mafter of a:st, comfortable vnto thee, and commendable amougtt others: I or a doAtor at haue made it 25 plaine and laidit as open as I can expreffe by the firt day, words, becaufe I would haue cuery man expert in weapons, worke and confidering that skill in weapons is fo honourable and fo preci- bring al thing ous a ching, that in my mind is may be preferred next vnco di- to pafig, for uinity, for as diuinity preferueth the foules of chofe which fol- thatis well low ir, from hell and the diuell, fo doth this noble and worthy done which is art of defence defend the body fronu hurts and skars of thole fure for bothe which learne it, but thofe which neither follow the one nor many learne the othet, the firf fore for ought Know may goe ethrow makes waft fire brands in hell, and the fecond fort may fit in an alchoufe, and chere fhew how rany hurss, and likewife tell how many wounds he hath about his body; for I haue known wany brae of cheir hurss, and in my conctis they take a pride in that they haue food to neere the point of a weapon, whereby to receiue wounds, therefore they are willing that the world hould know how ventnrous they haue been, but now in my minde if they had skill they need not bee hurt : wherefore skill is not onely auaileable to preferue and keepe the body withoue hurts and wounds, but alfo the vfe and practife with weapons, doth driue away all aches, griefes, and difeafcs, it remooneth congealed blood, and breaketh inpoftumes, it maketh the body nimble, and plyant, it flarpnect the wit,it increafeth the fight, and procureth Arength, and expelleth melancholy and cholerickn:s, and many other cuil conceits, it kecpech a man inbreath, in per-

## The Epiflie to the Reader.

feet health, it makes him to be oflonge life which vfeth ir, it is vnot him which hach the perfect skil in weapons, a moft friendly, \& comfortable companió, when he is alone, hauing but only his weapons about him, it putteth hum out of all feare, and in the wars and places of molt danger it makech a man bold, hardy valiant, and venturolls. wherefore they that are once experienced in the skill of weapons will afierwards to the end of their liues enconrage the vnskilfill to learne ftill, conlidering how neceffary a thing skillin weapons' is, imfomuch that Godand nature tollerates the pradtie of this skilitin weapons, which is here ment for the detence of mans body, it alfopteferuech many from murder, alfo in the wars it may likewife ftead a King, gentheman, or any other private fouldier; for ifin the wars a fingle combat is defired, as that of Golins, there flarted out of rhe army a Dassid who with a godly valour Itood in the gap, for the gond and preferuation of many mens lues, which no doubt elfe had perifhed in that great and dangerous battell. Thercfore it behooueth Kings being challenged by their equalls for the fafegard and good of their fubiects and country, to aduenture and hazard their owne liues in hope of a conqueft, io that thereby the wars nay ceafe.

Some there are which take delight to talke of the arte of defence, and yet haue no infight nor iudgement therein, the prouerbe is verified in fuch which goeth thus, there are fome which talke of Robin-bood which neuer fhot in his bowe, I fpeake this becaufe a gencieman on a time came to my Schoole and would not play by nomeanes, yer he was bufie with his congue in teaching others, and in difcourfing offeuerall weapons, and feuerall guards, bur by his words he bewraied his fmall iudgement, for his feech founded to no lence nor reafon, and fo I being weary with hearing him talke folong, and far from the marke which he aimed at, fo at length I rounded him in the eare, thus, hold your peace, or elfe fpeake fofily, for my vher laughs you to skorne. But we will to our matter againe, and draw to a conclufion of this Epifte, for the neceffary vfe of weapons. In Late the twelue there the Lord as it feemeth did thinke them to be more better thena coate vpon a mans backe, he therefore bade his Difciples generally, goe \{aid he, fell your coates and buy you

## The Epiflle to the Reader.

fwords, he fpake not this to one of themalone, but vato them all.
Now the Kingly Prophet Dauid teachech you where to weare your fwords, laying gird thy fword on thy thigh, hee doth not bid thee weare it about thy necke in a ftring, cuen fo as the Lord in many places of the Bible is faid to be of many profeffions, for he is called a hepheard, a husband-man, a Phytition, and Dawid in his a 44. Phalme; in a manner calleth him a fenfer, for there he faith that the Lord did teach lis hands co war, and this fingers to fight: He alfo faith in another of his Pfalmes, I an a worme and no man, and yet I feare not what man can doe vnto me.Other examples bending to this purpofe hereafter fhall follow more at large, fome in one Chapter, and fome in another, as they come in iny mind, and although it hath been my 'Audy and pradife this twenty yeeres, yet now I haue vnfolded cuery place, and Shewed eucry wrinkle of thefe few weapons, fo far as my inuention hath attained vnoo, and I haue fee theis downe fo large and made them fo plaine, as by words I could any way expreffe them, fo that thoumaift learne them in twenty dayes and leffe, if not all, yet enough for the fure defence of thy body, and the reft Chall follow in a fecond booke hereafter, If thou doft friendly accept of this.
In che meane time arme thy mind to thele weapons here following, for they are fufficient for thy defence at fingle combat, allo here thouthale find other leffons no leffe profitable then delightfull, if thou with content perufe thern, and fo I will hinder thes no longer from that which enfueth, and therefore ending my Epifle with thefe words of the Frier, who often in his Sermon faid the belt is behind, fo he that readeth but the beginning.of a booke, can giue no udgement of that which enueth; then read it oucr,and thou fhale not be deluded with the beit is behind.

I hope I may cal this booke a booke withour any offence, for the collier ie calleth his horfe a horfe, and the Spanifl, Iennet is but a horfe, Now as this art is called a Noble arte, and not fo named vnfictinoly, being righty vnderfood, for there is no art nor fcience inore to bee preferred before this, for that there is none that iumpeth in equality, nor that matcheth in fingulatity C 3
or

## Tbe Epiffle fothe Reader.

or that hath fo many fundry fubtill devices and ingenious in. uentions, as this noble att of defence hach. Now hee that doth but read of this art, yea although he read neuer fo much, yet without practife and by experience in triall, it will be vinperfect, for how can perfection be attained but by pratifc, and therfore italfo behooueth thee to vfe practife with fundry men, and fo so make vfe of the diuerfity of each mans skill, and then for thy benefi, like the wife phyfition who of many finples makech one compound, or as the bee which by her ferious induftry gashereth vertue from fundry forts of hearbs and flowers, \&e therof makech her hony, he is not therefore to be condemned of enuy, butrather to be commended of all.
Neither doe I write this booke altogether to profit thofe inf learning that which they before wanted, bus only to fee them and other willing minds a work which by arte and learning caa better fwim through fuch a deepe riuce then I can, it thould haue been better ifmy learning hadbeen anfwerable to iny wil, yet hoping that the wife will rather winke at fmall faults, then rafhly reproue that which may profit the fimple, for all haue not skill and cunning alike, I am perfwaded that fome will the rather paffe it ouer wich patience, alchough it be but only for affedion to the arte, and fo hoping that this my worke may bee profitable to all,for fo it can no way be hurffull to none, but if you chance to meete with this booke after he hath ferued out the apprentifhip of feauen yecres, if God grant me life folong you hall fee him in double apparell, and then you Ghall haue iuft caufe to fay that his mafter hath fulfilled his couenants, for I wifh alll men well, and euery one an increafe of skill in allilaudable and profitable arts or fciences, and So wish this long entry intoa litete parlor, Ilcaue you to him whofe feare is in besuen, and whofefoot-Aoole is the carth.And reft,

Thine in the Lord,
Iofeph Smertranve.


Of noble bratiren by proffifion, and brethren ins Chrif by Religion, willung all beallic and bappines to allthbm of the noble Art or Science of Defence; and as your proffifion is noble, fo in brotherily loute, I do e earmeftly requeff you all to o f e is in thar noble fapion, as the nume or title equires, the ratber, ©f forbecande yon are men, not onely yoted and tatleded of, but ofien looked on and more poined at, then any otber ordmary men are of what profffsion foeutr. Alfo it is the worlds wonder, to fee a mana of ciwill gourremement vfing bisisprofeffion, berefofore I pray you confider wuith mi alittle, that we are asa a Beacon fet on a hill, or lide a candle in a can-
 low, but les bimb befo mixt with both, that your light may fo fime before men, that they feeing gour difcreet gourrnement ded good bebatsiours may (by your good examples) reforme many ill i. firmities which they feo in themfelues. Alar, Ipray you confider and remember, that as the tree groweth, fobe falleth; we are not borne for sury fllues, but for our Countrie: : and five doe no good, thatygh wee doo soo barme, then better it werre that wee had neter b beens borne. The figge tree on the Gofpell, is fisid otrouble the ground, becauff be bare no fruite, and therefore better an addle Egge then an ibBBird; for a goodand a gody lffe, batba good and a golly end, and arv ungolly life hath an umpodly end: and therefore mof happiedierb that man, of whom the world doubtetion of his fatuation, allhought the wordd is ginen to preake well and chartitably of the wiciced when theg aredead, andy et it may be they thinke in their
mindes

## The Preface to the Profeffors

mindes the are gore to hell; then call to minde, and wifely confider of this, and allo of your end, and in what great teopardie your lives ffand; for he that to day is well, , , fffie, and frong, may the next day, nay, the next hoorre, haue his life taken fodainely from bim at vnawares, when be leaff thingeth ons:, for many of this proffgsion doe not liue out balfe their duies, for there is many waies to bring a man to his end, fome by quarrelling when they baue no causf, and fo areffabbed fodaincly, and fome by druankerneffe, asyous Batll heire avone; for I could write of many which came to their ends, and yet deed not all in their beddes, nor all in the warres, nor allat the gallowes, and yet many of thom have gone thefe waies: for there are wicked and anill angells which are the wayters, and doe attendupon an vngodly life, for Death refpetteth nomamer of perf on, for be doth afjawlit the skilfullf fo well as the ignorants, the wife fo wellas the foolifh, and therefore et is good for cuericman to bee prepared and in a readineffe, and then bee mecde not to feare to fay, Conne Lord Iefus, come quickely; today or to morron, or when thoumith, and with what manner of dewth foever, fo it come by thine ap. pointment.

Avdnow (for examples $f$ ake) I thme it not amiff to renew your res membrance with the death of fome few of the Noble Science, bocauf 1 bass knowne their ends 3 and firft, to beginne coith that one of matper Turner, which hould be the laft, be didnot forpeedly byill Iolin Dun, with a thruff in the eces, but be was ar foone mastithered a fiemwards, viith a Boote of a PIfoll; for neither of them, after they hind dheir deaths wound, Jpake one word; lor, by the you may fee, that fome bawkes are but a fight, and fome hor fes are billed wowh to tournue, and a m.un is but afbotte: but now, by reafon that Maiffer Twiner, by bis valuckechand, thruft out troo or three eies, and becaite none others are knowne to doe the ide, ot baxh therefore bied an admiration in the ignorrunt and umbjgare fort, infomuch, that generally they doe applande him with this commendation, fayivg that hee hat noot lef the like bebinde him, nor weeter will be tho like againe: But this is a great e crour in thinking fo, crdffarre decerived are thaty for I woll knew Maifler Turner by familiar acguaintiance, and thive, iore (to feedee the right) he was A mortigy fellow and dffruedwell, brit yet I know maxy which can gof for meare the eie as c:uter be could doe, if thog folffed, as in this booke you 乃oall fos maty fulfo tbrufts at fenerall mapons, which may

## of the Noble Science of Defence.

endinger any mans eies, if thofe which learne them doc carry ennions mindes, or if they were defiroust to worle a man fuct a $m$ If chinfe, but God forbid bhat any man houtd bo forll muded. I will net Jay, but thas by chasnoce fuch a a bing may be done, and foit may bee that Maifer Turnci dulit more ly clasusce, without any intestion; for fof ome do iudge of it : but ff a man choppe a thy uf at the fice. yet, hy chaynce,
 will hat the cie, but with profferng many, by clance be may: novithe
 they beare not a iklling beart, for then we flallbiue wo kelling band, as that example more of Henry Adlingron for killing bis Maiffer Iohn Deucll, wus banged: Furlony be drumbe a pince of Aqua vite at one draught, and beflldowne ayd died prefontly: Weltcoas, for fome unkindneffe ceceiscd of bis owne daugher, he went into a wood narare Perune in Corncwall, and there binyed bimelfe: Richard Caro, bee died mof miferably of ibe French bilfeaff ein mo olde boife neare Plimmourli, athourgh be bid a neev fuite of clolber from toppe to toe, yet bee wa fol outh Jome a cre: antre, that no bodie would det bim batrbotir in bis houfe, for part of his body w.s rotten and funcle a boure groursd : alfo old Carter of Worcellcr lay a long time fitke of almgering diforfe, and being roorne anay to nothing but skinne and bones, bee died in bis bed: and f o of maky more I could wivite, but it is trot my intention to write a Chromicle, and therefore thesef fevp paillf cruse for ibis time, I wrose it bust onely to purt yous in minde, th. 1 yous may foleade your tives dxily and bourcty, as fo Deatb were esen at yout betces, and fo to line as though gon foutd tine for cuer, alw:yyes kecping fomel bing for arsinie day, as fatth the Pronerbee, thit is to fiy, for fickeneffe, if God dor fondit, and for olde age when youtr akjing liones doc refufg io performe thas labour whach the heart is willugg of fet them to.
Therefore I would with cuery one, in bis youth, to proside wnd eet himelfe athomely bome, and to fettle in one good torne or otber, for a rowityg fone pithererth no Moffe; the Graflopper cannot liec but in the graff", and the Sulam.uder diech if bee goo ontio of the fire : therefire, foend not thy time in triuel frimplice to place, but keepe thy homely home, and there begione thy piending as thon maief continue, cutting thy conte according to thy cluth, and wot feriding allat one time, and


## The Preface to the Profeffors

Wherefore, you youg brauches of this nobile Art of Defrnce, of ow I meane to fpeake, and vntoyon I doe make this carweft request, thal you will beflow ally our ide t time, which too tvo many fend in ide companie, and is drunternneff, fuch ill peen time, I couid wifh, that it were cither bcfowed in reading of good bookes, or ing giuing good compsell vni f frcth yong men a doo freguenty our company, teaching them befides skillwith weapens, bow to manage therimeapons, and how, and wheen to appoint the field, but not upon eury drunken quarrell, and chiefly of all, charging them from profaxing the Sabbothday, drumkenneffe, and all other vices belonging thereunto, wbich makes sher whbite foules fo blacke as incke. finking before God as it were the fmenke of fupphre and brimffone:and thes dieing will parchaffy you, not onely the loue of God, but the ewiff of all the world, and your good report will be in eury mans moowh, yen it will gor before yon ing our trauells, like w with an Herrauld of Armes, oe elfo like a peedy Poffe, owertake you wherefoencr you goe, whereas on the costrary fate, thoofe wbich doo fpend their dayes in drunkenneffo, axd keading their lives Lafciciuoufy one mifforture or other happenth vure them, etber by the lofe of a limbe, or by the loffe of an eci, or by the loffe of their lives.
For I bawe krowne mary uny skilfull mennot onls of ibis Prefefion, but likenifo of others, which delight in vugedilineffe, drunkenneffe; and being put to orviall in their Art or Profeffion, they bawe received difgraca and lost the day, and the afterwards baue thought that thy made a good excuff, in faying that they were in drinke when they went alook
 is it meerc madres, that any man hould be fof foolffh in taking too much driske when before bayd bee knowe th this is the day, wherein I am to ftand vpon my credite; now becauff I know, that many will recade this befides thof evnio whom it it dedicated : therefore I wib all men, of whal Profesion focencr,to makes this reckoning (asaforefaid) every doy, and not 10 br forgerfullof that which bee fould chbiefly remember; for ckery day one time of the day or other thow mayf be puif oto thy foftis, and thereby hate an occafion io fommon vp all thy wittes, and driwn so ve thy beff sfill, and yet all tintle enough to ferue thy terrwe.
Wherefore vnto yow which this any way may concerne, I wifh you ta apply your felwes vnto yone Proffosion, and fill to be ftedying and pradifing the srue and perfect rules belonging both to the trive andfafa
ofthe Noble Science of Defence.
play, effecially vuto fuch weapons as you are not growne vuto the full perfoction before band, if iby may ferwe eyb her for the warres or for fimglacombate.

Be not w. $f$ in thine owne conceit, in thinking that thou hast cecreed all the shill which is pofible to be learmed ittresdy, farre deceined are thoas ff floont thinde fo, for if ibout lise till thoo art oide, yet thou mayest learnce fill, for one guard croffetha another, and the fitfe phay crofleth the true ply; there are many fecret fippes and gumeds to be myenced, and ore ossud dor one tricke may moreflede thee, and more prenaile aganisl fome men then another; for wifen with plane play, thou cans hot endauger thy eremy, yet with fatfo play thou mayest ht bim, for alluyugh thy encmy doe kinow the deferice of fame manner of fitlep pliy, yet it may be be is not acquainited, neither with the defence noo of wance of thine, for there is more wayes so tho wood then one, and bee which hugaweth many mayes, may goe the nearest?
Ewen fo, je chat thowerti many guards, and the true skill at many we.pons may be the better able to anfipece any fiowt bragg ing forreiser or frumger when they cone with their chrilenges imto our catumy, let Them be of what nution foecher', and at whast werpouss they will, and vpon what tearmes they dave, ,u bitherto they hate berene fufficeenty ynfiwered durngegy time, by Mcister Mathews, AL, wifter Turner, Mailler Bradthaw , and Misifter Yates; for thefe chicfly foode to ft.ke against all commers, and yet C can not chisfe but remember Misister Church, and Misiter Brentley, who of fibs Lutter time bismedy fresed to be wellicported of, andfor aughs that I cased dever hearte or fee anne get at any of their hands, they hase fmatll coutfe to briege of their :winming, for they athaxes wewt cavay with Preved Arubs's aud hoockes. I neaserwith blacke eyes, broken fbinnes, or crickepp pees; but of wyy felfo I will fyy listle, becaufe the world is sufficently fitsisferd of morc theis at this time I meane to write of now, althouth the ignorant cas not anfwer them for mam of skill and inderement, yet they will reioyce and clap their hands to fee them arywered by fufficens and able mers of valown amdi iwdgement.
Now if any Bould aske my reafor, why fome frouldhase fich good fortune, and otberjomedif graced, and yet by the world isudecmens iteir skill equall; becaMfy you haill not mulfo bong aloutt it, I will guickely tell you my opinion, geod gouwrrement and gooid antriage is tha maine point D

## The Preface to the Profeffors

thereof, yet me thinkes among gt the vulgar fort I boare fome fay, becanfe two or tliree fumous fellomes are dend, that there will neuer be the like aqaine : bist farre deceised are they which thinke fo, for there bath not beeve fo gond, but there may come fo good againe: for as yet I never knew ary man bui be hath mette with his match, and therefore I wiphewery one not to prefume one fleppe the bigher, for any gifi that God befowesh on thee, neibher to thinke thy felfe better then any man, though there are fome which, for want of dif cretion, will dy fable others, onely to maguifio themfelues, and thiuking therehy to make tha world beleene there is none fo good as they. Loe, this is the csufe of many quarrells, and fornetimes murthers : Therefore fpenke not ewill behinde the backe of anie man, nor disfrate no mans play norworkemanflip, be it neuer So fimple, doe not like other Tradefmen, which cannot liue one by another, but with a kinde of grudging hatred, as the Hatter against the Hatter, the Shoomaker aganst the Shoomsker, and the Tailer would oucs bang the Tailer by bis good will, and fo of all T rades the like; but I would gladly wish it otherwife of all Trades, but especially of this Profef sion, to be losing and kinde one to another, meeting togetioer on their trasells, and like Dirds of a feather hoolde together, and in brotherl's lone embritce one another, andlet it not be from the teeth outward, but from the beart imward, for you fball baus mawy others which will voder. mine yon, and creepe into yourr fecrets, and fo ranne betwixt one an. other with tattling tates, ondile to fet yous rogether by the eares, and then lageb tt you when they batue dowe : Loe, thas an cuitt ongue is the cullfe of muy a mans death: wherefore lenue and for fate alle ewill vices, thanghyou fe we not mast in reffelt of your manhoode, yet faste to offind Godfor dosis of bis imdyements, whath undowbtedly lightetb upon all befo th is carelefly forget bim.

For, as ibe greateft honsw thit ener came to man, was through skill in weupus, ard th: greateft dopne-follthat ener came to man, wan throgzthpride of'sis monboode, and in ngglefting his duecy towardes Gol: w'sercfire, w yos woothily carrie she fite or title of Mh.isters of Defe cee by your profefor, the be the foms you feems to be, I meane, meuse leave frudying and pratiting till you coms co the ground, and un. sill yous use forndedinro the de ipth of your Art, for there are misnio other priscipulp ints beianting to the warres, befiles, march, troupe, -harge, endfand; emen founto a.Mister of Defon ce belongeth the

## ofthe Noble Science of Defence.

skillof many other weapons, befides backe fuord, fiword ind aitajer, rapier and dagger, and the flaffo: for, if loce bee not proweded with the skill of many other we.spons, bee may be to fecke of his defence; if hee. fionld be challenged unto fowe other weapons wheb hace is wnacquanted with ill.

Then bes is not worthie to be calleda Master of Deferce, which eannot defend bimfelfe at allwe.pons, esfecially agrienst ctereric ordinas:rie man nos profefsing the Art of Deferce, nor ercept heecumply wo to a Lyon, as well as with a Lambe, and fomet thes againe to play the Lambe fo well as tbe Lyon; for bee that c.an not tellwhen to fpowe, whd when to frike; and bee which cannot defend himfelfe, cumpot teatho. thers to defend themfelues, nor is bee not worthy whe c.illed.s Maister of Defence, bur be that can doe it is wortbie of that title ; aisd ilucrefore greally wronged of them which will call ficth a ove a Fencer, for the difference betwixit a Ma fter of Defence, amda Fercer, is as mo. In as

 chant fellehth the like mares as the P'edler doll: Is therefo e a di:uchimt and a Podler allone? Nomore is euery Fencer a Alsister of Deferce; nor exerie Fidler hath not skill in Pricke. fong, and liberefore no Muf tian; if a man hate but temne fillingsworth of Pimes, Points, and Irckle, hee may iben becalled a Pidier, bat hee that batb absumdiced fortes of wares, Bball carceget the name tobec.lled in Merchiont, no more can bee which batth gotien a little more skill at thiec or foure weapons then enerice common man, yet bee may lie ta feike of the true sill of maty other we, pons which belomg vinta $A$ atuster of Defince,

Xer one thing more, which I hidd almost forgotters; wato Schollers and unto $V$ Vhers of Schooles of thes Profofsion, profficran wrevin 10 pour Muitfers neisher in wordnor deced, nor deny not your Tistors, but beare a beartic lane vino bim which bathbrought yois from natherg to Gomething, from a houldow wisto at fubstanec; Let not the Prictifor-
 their Maister, and (it may be) better, accordings to the prowebe, A manmay make bis ovne dogge bire him; but in my minde, fictha doggo is worthy of a rope: make the mplication as youfice occafing. For I hatue knowne mary an wagratefull knawe efonpe ibe gallows, by the meanes of an boseft misded man; yer fuch a bnare ( vpon fimill or aw ocer ion)

## The Preface to the Profeflors,\&c.

bath aftraneards gone about to bang fuch a friend ifhe could, cuen fo, fone young lastie Schollers, when they haue gotten perfect skill, for lacke of witte, would offer to wrong their aged Maister, if they could: It is not frange to finde one fcabbed hoeepe in a whole flockc; nor it is no maves amongest nany honest men, to findea treacherous varle, voyde of all honestic, feare, and witte. Now hauing no warrant to force you to follow wo cosnjeth, but onely in brotherly lowe, I thougbt good to reguest you, and encrie ofyou, to amend one ; and God amend usall, be Imenne, whofe Seate is in Heaken,
and whofe Foote-Stoole is the
Earth.

## Your well-willing friend,

Iofeph Swetnam,


A Table of the Contents.

r. T
 nod, with otber princ ipall notes worthy of memory.
2. The fecond declareth the difference of findiy mens teacbing, with other directions.
3.7bree fearcfalle exaraples of marder.
4. The fourt!' Chapter /beweth unto whom skill bulongeth, alfotha frums of druskenneffe.
5. The cate of guarrels, and with what preparation you ought to be prepared witballto an were a challenge.
6. This Ch.pter fociveth diwers re.fons or introductions to bring theo the better into thy weapon.
7. This Ch.apter fleneth that feare aud fary are both chemies wito trie vilotr.
8. And this Chapter fiowesh how the vfo of weapous came, alfo of the manner of wcupons $v f e d$ froms time to time, with other good inftruEtrons.
9. This Chaprer flemeth what an excellemt thing skillis, with a perfiv, fion to cilmen to forkecre the liveding or the maintaining of fillo quirrels.
10. This senth Chapter fleereth she trickes of a cow ard.
11. Tbis elenenth Chapper is of queft:ons and arfivers betwnitt the miffer and the fcholler.
 defence is grominded.
Now next followe th the shill of we.tpons, and firf the true gard of rapier and dugger for the de fence euther of blow or thrutt.
Many other gards following with a def oription thereof at the rapier and dagger.
Therales and gardfor the fingle rapier.
Thegardat baske-forord.
Sencrall

## The Contents.

Searalligards at thoffaffer pike.
Quefions and anywers betwixt the mafler and fcholler conetrning the faffe.
Afure gardand very eafly to be learneel at the frord sund dagger. Cervisire reafons why thou majif not firke in fight with no weapon. A briff of fonecr principall peints for thy continustll memory.
The authors opinion concerning the flort fivord and dugger.
Agard for the fhort fivord and dagger to erveosnter againfta rapir and dager.
Quefionsauddanjwers benvixt the mafter and fcholler concerving the gokermment of the congue.
The authors opinion concerning the ods that a tall man of furture batb against a litite or a meane manofftature, and the ode that afrong man bath of a wecke man.
Crtaine obferwations for afcholltr ar any others.
The fenerall kind of weapons which are co 'ic plaid with.
The autbor farcoell to Plimosh.
The austors conciffion.

1


## 50 This firft Chapter fheweth what

 weposs are chiefly tobelearned, with many other prin. cipall notes worthy obferuation.

ECAVSE old weapons lych rufly in a corver, and cuery man is defirous of the neweft fathion of weapons, elpecially if they feeme tobe of more daunger to the eneny then the old, therfore it is my intent \& purpofe at this time to expreffe and fet downe both the erue and falfe play principally of the rapier and dagger, and Itaffe, for I hold that the skill of thefe two weapons are chiefly and neceffary of enery man tobelearned, for to have the vfe of a rapier to ride with, and a faffe to walke a foore withall, for thofe which bune the skill of chefe two wespons may fafely encounter againft any man hauing any otherweapon whatfocuer as hereafict you fhall be fufficiently fati:fied.
But firf a word by the way in commendations of thole two weapons, this I can fay and by gnod experience If peake it, that he which hath a rapier and a clofe hilted dagger, and skill withall to vfe him hoth great ods againlt the fivord and dagger, or fword and
buckler.
$2 \quad$ The Schoole of Defence.
buckler, and the like I doc affirme of a faff againfall long weapons; my.reafons fhall follow anon; bur firt I will peake more in commendations of the rapicr and dagger, note $i$ it well,for it is the fineft \& the comelieft weapō that cuer was vfed in England, for fo much cunning to this weapon beiongeth as to no weapon the like : wherefore I would wifh all gentemen and others, not onely to learne the true and perfe $\hat{t}$ skill thereof, but alfo to practife it ofeen. For there is no exercife in the world fo healthfull to the body, and the skill of ita fure defence for the fame, likewife it alfo behouech enery man to be well inftructed in this weapon, the rather, and for becaufe it is a weapon which for the moft part all out-landifh men doe vfe; wherefore being vnprepared thou maift be the beter able to anfiver them at their owne weapon either in fingle combat or otherwife, but if thon delay thy practife till thou haft need, then I fay at the very tinie of need it will be too late, and little amalleable to thee, forbeing learned in fuch hafte it is foone forgoteen, and he which neuer learned, bur doth truft to his own cunning may foone loie his life, for there is but two wayes for the doing of euery thing; that is to fay cither a goodor a bad, and commonly by nature cuery man hath the worft way ; both at this exercife and fo at all others the like, but the bef way being learned, by a little praetifec keepeth it fo perfect,that it is neuer forgotten againc.
A Phyfitian is but little regarded, but in the time of fickneffe, eulen to the practifing of skillis not remembred vntill a man hath need to vic it. Plato was a Diuine, yet he fo highly efteemed the art or skill in weapons, infomuch that he commandech that chil-
dren flouldearne fo foonc as they are able, and cyrus faith that skill in weapons was as neceffary as husbandry; but now when you hane the trucand perfect skill, be not ouer malh nor tale nut exceptions at cuery light occafion, but onely by pood adnific to vic it, in cales ofneceffity; renenge notenery finall wrong, nor quarrell not vpon eucry light ucafion, for the frongethand the ricioth mathat is, mut pockec vp an inime at fonctimes, then be not hatly in thy wathe wo wrath, but panfe athough thy weapon be dhawne, for gera imall, the thrul being giucu, and hic blow once fallen, it wil thath have we ar be toolate then to repent; wherefore bo vanant, but arall. yernut too venturous, fo fight as thou mait fight againe, for the hafty man ncuer wanterh woe, and he which will quarrell for a finall matter crulting vinto his owne manhood, yet for all his skill and courage, may oftentimes mecte with his matel, and fo carry away the blowes with dithonor.
For a fmall or a bad quarrell hath many times ill Aquarelli, fiuceffe, thercfore let thy quarrell be grounded vpon orienimes a good foundation, for then it halfe defendeth it felfe, dictectiont. butifitbe vpondrinke or in defence of a lewd woman, fuch quarrells are uaught, and haue ill ficceffe; againe haue this care,ncuer be proud of thy skill, bue goe as if thou hadet itnot, except occafion ferue : but be not lifted vp with a proud minde one flep the high. er, for curtefic wins fanour with all men; wherefore all way fo frame your fyecch and anfwers, that thereneuer grow any quarcell vpona foolifh word or a froward anfwer.

And furthermore, haue this skill in thy memory, fo ruc thy tongue as neuer to fpeake ill, whether it bee truc or falfe behind the backe of any man, for if the

## The Schoole of Defence.

pary fpoken of be not in prefence, yet lie may heare of ir, and thou main be called in queftion for the fame when thou thinkefl leaft ypon it, yea although thou fuppofe that thou fpeakef it to thy triend, for I haue knowen many which to magnifie themiclaes would boat andbrag of their owne manhood, and difable others, which were far better men then themflues; thinking neuer to heare ofit againe; but this one folly hathbeen the caule of many quarrells, and thereof fpringeth deadly hated, and fomtimes muthers. Yet I docaduife all men if vadifcreet words doe paffe from the mouth of the fimple forlacke of wit (but I will not fay for lacke of drinke) but whether it be drink or meer foolithnefle, reuenge not eucry wrong, but firt confider the worth and quality of the party which hath wronged thee, for if hee be a defperate perfon, or one which harh nothing to loofe, nor wife nor children to care for, fome fuch there are that are defperat, Be valian but and care not if they were oure of the world, as our pronotw ventu- uerbe faith, hab or nab, fall backe fall edge, they care
rous. not whof houle is on fire, for they hutie nothing to loofe, now although thou haft the peifect skill with thy weapons, yet fighe not with fach raskills, nor with none vpon euery limall wrong; for fo tho 1 mailk be ac. counted careleffe and bloody minded, as though ehars the God of bateaile wure thy [ather, or thinking chy lelfe to bee more mighty then Hercules, or as one alrogether forgetting that which fo of hath been feen, that a little wretch of ftature by skill, iudgement, andreafon, hath fubdued and ouercome a far more

Forlhe that is well infructed in the perfea skill with his weapon although but finall of ftature, and

Tbe Schoole of Defence.
5
weake offrength, may with a little moouing of his foote or a fuddaine turning of his hand, or with the guicke agility of his body kil and bring to the ground the tall and frongef man that is.

Now before thougoe into the ficld to fight, Girf Forrecmer of all put God before, and vfe thy deuotion to hime this lefisn. priuately, and commit thy felfe wholly to his mercy, becaufe hee redeemed thee, and the victory liechin him, if thy skill and cunning were neuer fogood; tor reatemet: if thou goe with a fure hope and truf in God, and thy thonhentan quarrefl good, and fome skill withall, then fight and watwora feare not, and although at the firt it will be fearefuil mins in winer to molt men, being but once experienced thercin, it dy ike aluife will encourage and make a man bold, yer take chis by in bast dee a bor the way, and note it well, for skill makes fome men to- mancis. wards, for it thoulcarneft the beit skill thon cantt, and in a fence fchoole mecteft with one that is fo good, and cunning asthy felfe, fuch a one will hit the forio times in fpite of thy teeth, the which hit makes fome thinke with themfelues, I did now lye in as fure a gard as I could for my life, and yet if X had beco in the field this hit might haue killed me.

But I ray there is great ods betwixt fighting in the ficldand playing in afence-fchoole, for in the field being both fober, I meane if it be in a morning ypon coldblood, then euery man will as much feare rokill as to bekilled, againe a man nall fee to defend either blow or thruft in the field then in a fence fhoole, for a man will be more bold with a foile or a cudgell, becaute there is fratl danger in either of them.

But whenthey come to tell theit tale at the point of a rapier, hey will fand offfor their owne fafety;go notinto the fiedd in the afternoone, party for the
$\mathrm{L}_{2}$ anoiding

The Schoole of Defence.
atoiding of the common fipech of thofe which will fay it is a drunken match, neither goe not prefently upon the fuddain falling out; for choller oucreommeth the wits of many a man, for io a mad fury skil! is littic thought ypon, and therefore very dangerous to both; for althongh thy nemoy ferue thee well; and fo thou being carefull and not bearing any wind to kill, yet thy encmy it he be out a ranke coward, pondrink or fury, or upora hot blood, will be fodeperate, that if you funcr him he will endanger thee.

There is feldone or nener any quarell begun but inanafternoone, for then commonly the drinke is in and tie wit is ont, aldhough thon knoweft thy felfe in good cale, and not to have seceined more drimke then tolultice thy wait, yet dofthou not lanow how little drinke will ouercome the wits of another man; and this I lnow, and by good experience I fueake ir, here is no ods during the time betwixt a madde man and a drimkatd.

Neucr ief winh edectooles, nor phay not the foole with thy weapons, buikecpechen to detend thy felfe when occafon thall require thee, or at fich teme as chou thatebe oppreffed, tion many hates and mex haifchiefe hath been done by oucr-much fold in ietting withweapons, when ar the begtiming thee was no harmemenit.

Euer refer the quarell to betry ed ia the morning, for then thy adueriay fo wel as thy lelfebeing in cold blood, skill auaileth, and he which the night before would feeme to fight with the diuell, will in the morning be as cold as a clocke; for then it is the nature of eucry man as well to feare to kill, as tobe killed, and fo thou by skill mait fight long withour danger, and fight

The schiole of Defince.
7
fighewithmany, and wa molure.

 bache weward he Sume, and fo thane le rhe gromd, whend



 make choice of he loweft gromed, for he which hatia a.... the lowettewne, hath me greates aduantage. Aiforake hecue thathouftuke notwinthy rapier, for fo thoumayed berde ir, and bring thy felfe to thine enemies merey, and it may be he will take the adounthage ofthee : Ifthy rapier fall out, ${ }^{\text {F thy hand, take }}$ thy dasesery the poine, and makicanofer to thew it, for that will fo dare thine enemy, that hee wall ftand vntill dion hate taken yp thy waponagaine.

Bur ifthourcouer thine enemies weapons, (as I ramede of have kowne many let fall then weapons in fight) monne
 him ano more for that cine; for, to varme hy ene-nomande
 lenda weapos whentaginf thy felfe, for thelotwo wes follice hate beene the end of any rood mens tanes: if thine chemy tall, hure him, if he will not yedde op his wapon, but kill teim not, chough his lite do lie m thine hands, bu if thon fare him, fight with him no mone for that times for I have kownemany that might firt hanc killed, butby faring their cucmics, haucbeenekilled themflues; if thine enemies werponbreake, then there is fanour to be fhewed: bue thefe twoo laft poines are tobe conditioned vpon. When any two Geademen, or other, whatloctace,
shal!

Shall hatue occafon on fis r , yer it is untami $\Gamma$ e, at their mecting in the fred, tor the one of them to fay before they beginne, shew mec that fanour which thou wouldefl hate thy lelfe, that is, if I fall, or my weapon breake, flay thy hands, and I will doe the like. Have alwayes as great care to faue the life of thy enemy as of thine owne, fearing more the ludgements of God, then the Lawes of the Realme. Likewife, neucr be too earneft in perfwading a coward to go with thee into the ficld to fight; for I hane knowne a Gull that would abufe a man in words behinde his backe, but when he hath beene cal!ed to account for it, by the partie grieued, hee durf not anfwere him in the field, yet by earnelt prowoking, hath gone and put a farre better man then himfelfe to the wort.

Therefore I inold it very vnfortunate to perfwade any man too too earnefly, to goe into the field to fight againt his will; neither goe into the field with cuery rafcall, for thou dof hazard thy felfe, and getreft no credite, wherefore, if fuch a one do challenge thee, if thou canft conueniently, breake his pate, for he is worthy of fomewhat for his forwardnes, but to anfwer him otherwife, let this excule privilege thee; fay thou fcomeft to doe him that credite. Let thy rapier be of a reafonable length, rather toolong then too fhort, foure foote ar the lealt, except thine enemie doe give or fend thee the length of his weapon; then it is a point of manhonde to match him as neare as thou canf: alwayes let thine cnemy tell his sale at the point of thy weapon ; but truft him not to whifperwith thee, left hee fhall fabbethee, or elle by itrengeh recoucr thy owne weapon, and to doe thee a mifchiefe before thoubeaware; keepe cleane thy
râpier;

The Schoole of Defence.
9
rapice; remember that of Alowander, how he caffered a Sondier our of his Army, becaufe he was making cleane of his Armor, enenthen when he fhould haue ved it. Lakewile there is a Prouerbe, A workeman is knowne by his tooles : Then if thou hat skill to vfe thy weapons, let it appeare by the cleanly kecping of them, then leane not thy rapier in a wet Icabbard, when thon commeft to thy iournies end.

Yet once more I doe aduile all men to take heede how they ieaft or fhew their trickes in travell in their Chambers with theirweapons, no though the fabbard be on; for by fuch fooliih ieafing I hauc knowen much mifchicfe done, and fometimes murder, when there was no hure meant at all; dierefore I do wifh the wifer to rule the other, fo that a mifchiefe may be prenensed before it be done, for elfe repentance may come too lata. Alfo in phaing with fticks, withoutbutons, many (for want of skill) may loofe an cie, as many haue donc hecretofore. Many a man willay, That skillin weapons is good, and one of the principallelt things that belongeth to a mann, yer themelues alogerder vaskilfull; in their youth they thinke it too foone to leatne, and inage too late, yee when they are wronged, they would ginc any thing, that they were able to anfivere their encmy withont feare or hare, as hee which is skilfall in his weapons maydoc.

Goenotinto the field withone that is knowne to For thapens be a common drunkard, wo though thoutake him ne- in mh bume ner fo lober, for it thon chance to hare him, the val- ned nome gar fort will deene that he was drunke, fo thou dof fenen yease hazard chy life, and gerno crediee, then take no exceptions at a Drunkuids words, for what he fpeaketh
is notregarded amongit men of diferetion, yer many times it fo falleth out, that a drunken madde-braine meetes with a prodigall vnwife fellow, and they do quickely vpon a word, nay vion a looke, make a fodaine brawle, to the difturbance of the rett of the company; for hee that will mach a crooked dagger with a crooked theathe, in lecking may finde one; enen fo he that is giucim fwaggering and quarrelling, doth meet with his match fometimes, may very ofien it fo tallethout.
Alfolie is unwife which will beginne a quarrell ia a Schoole of Detence, vpon the taking, of a knocke, as many do, for a man playedh, either to gine a knock, or to take a knocke: but with skill a man may play a long time, and doe necther of them, except their fury doe onercome their wittes; but hee which cannotarme himfelfe with patience, by confidering with himfelfe the danger of his rahnes; lethim fpend all his idle time in practifing in weapons, withone that is skilfull; for by vfe of play, many a man commeth to know the danger of rafluefle, and fo with a due confideration, doe thereby come to mittigate their fuious affection, whercas an other fort of harebraines (vpon very finall oceafion) will be alwayes ready, not onelie to breede, but alfo to maintaine any idle quarrell, whetier it be right or wrong, in Fairc or Market, Fence feinole or Tauctue, as many witleffe drunkards doe ; for skill withour diferetion makes fome more forward and defperate in maintaining idle quarrells, then otherwife they would be, whereas a man of diferetion and goucrnement will be no whit the prouder of skill, buegocas if he had it not, and amonglt wife men he is ascounted molt
valiant

The Schoole of Defence.
valiant which brags leant, and is maiter of himlelfe, in conquering hisaffedions, and alwayes fore-canting the wort, before a milchiefe doth happen; for a common quarreller is like a common hackny, which is nener without a galled backe; cuen fo a quarreller is feldome withott hurts: let thy hands be flower then thy tonguc, yet let not thy fword rult for want of ve, nor yet furfer with bloud, but after many threas in place conuenient vatheathe thy fivord, bue yee do it with an vnwilling kind of willingnes, as noe being too prodigall of thybloud inmif-fending is idely, and yet grudge it not when occafion ibali ferue, either for thy King and Countric, or in defence of thine owne reputation, but not in cuery rafcally brawle, nor in a great affembly, where manie times a foolinh madbraine, will draw his weapon vpon an idle quarrell; in fuch a place I have knowne, that after one hath drawne, many haue likewife drawen their weapons for company, according to the olde Prouerbe, One foole makes many: But howfoever, in fuch a cafc 1 hane knowne much mifchiefe quickely done, although many of them haue not knowne the caufe, nor whom to frike, vntill it hath beene too late; but then when all is done, thefe great fighters, when it is too late, they would make enquirie how the quarrell beganne, and vpon what occafion; but men of difcretion and wifedome would exanine the caure firft, before they do vn fheathe the ir weapon : for in my minde, hee that vndertaketh fuch quarrells, thewech neither manhoode, wit, nor valour, and contrary vnto all the Lawes of Armes; yet I will not fay, bur, where much peopleare, a man that meanch no harinc, may bewronged; buthere

## 12

The Schoole of Defence.
is no wifedome to right himfelfe in a multitude : for feare of a mutiny, I meane in fetting many together by the eares, but in a place conuenient thou maieft call him in queftion which wronged thee before, examining the caufe of the quarrell, when the heate is paft; and then if you finde it but a pelting quarrell, being wifely confidered vpon, and that it hath beene mo great fcandall wnto thy good name and credite, partly, becaufe the match was made, and the field was appointed in a drunken humour, in fuch a cafe I fay, itwere a verie wife part, for the one of them to make a friend acquainted, which by wifedome may end the quarrell, before a further mifchiefe be done: Nay more, I haue knowne as good 2 man as cuer did draw fivord, vpon an idle quarrell, hath himfelfe gone the next morning to the houfe of his aduerfarie, not making any friend at all acquainted with the buflnes, and hee hath thus faid; I am come to anfwere what the laft night I promifed, bur yet withall, to tell thee, that our quarre!l is but fmall, and beganne vpon idlenefic, yea fo fmall, that I am loath to hauc it come into the eares of wife men, left they fhould accoune vs both fooles: now, for the avoyding of this and other daungers, it is not amiffe for the wifer to offer this reafonable compofition, though wee doe thinke him too weake for thee, for then thy credite will be the leffe in fighting with him', and yet if thou doekill hins, the danger is as great towards thee, as if thou diddeft kill the beft man in the world : now on the other fide, fay he is a man noted and knowne to be as fufficient a man as cuerdrew fword; then I fay, if an honeft end can be made, withour fighting, that is the beft way. For if two men of warre meete

The Schoole of Defence.
at Sea , they will not fight willingly one with the other, for they will confider before hand, that there is little elfe then blowes to be gotten onc of the other: wherefore, ifyou be perfwaded to end it with a boll of Wine, be not froward butyceld vnto reafon, if no friends know of the quarrell, then (as I faid before) the wifer of the two may fay vito the other; Come, ler vs goc and drinke our felues friends, Iet vs take a haire of the fame dogese, which the laf night did bite vs, and made vs madde, fhall now cure vs and make vs whole ; and fo let vs fimother vp this polting quarrell.
But now, if the other be froward, and will not acecept of thy reafonable motion, but will needs end it with weapons, then, rather then fhew thy backe to thy fivefull enemy, let him fee thy heartbloud:I meane, ifhe can get it, bur there is no fuch danger in fight, except Skill and Difcretion be wanting : wherefore rowze vp thy firit, and what thou vidertakef, dos it without rahneffe, and yet performe it without feare alwaies; in a good quarrell, if thou be oucrcone, let thy heart yeelde laft of all; and if thine enemie be not too rafh vpon thee, it is a fufficient conquef, that when thou mightef hurt or kill, yet do it not, but filil weare Patience to the hard back, for by fuch vietory thou workeft thine owne peace; and he that thus doth, gettecth himielfe credite.

As ther are many inen, lo they are of many mirds, if the peacefor fome will be fatisfied with words, and fome nuft makers are needes be anfwered with weapons, and fome are ne- fed, then the uer well full nor fafting; therefore I would haue cue- quarcelless \& rie man fitly äinned for his defence, what companie mare accurfed. focuer hekeep, let himbe armed with patience, ftilla

## 14

## The Schoole of Defence.

We munnor faire tongue, and a good weapon : fo that ifone will feck rcuenge not ferue, another mult, rough or fnoothe, as occaone of anto- fion fermeth: for fome are like vnto nettles, which if the Lord hith thou landle tenderly, it will fting thee, but ifthou keuenge is mine.

## The schoole of Defence.

 full, except thou diddeft leade a very vpright life before, which may very well be doubted: for if thous diddelt fruc God aright, or fearelk his iudgenents, then thou wouldeft net for any caufe fight with thy brother.Concerning this therc is an excellent example of Paticnce flewed by King Danid, in the fecond of $S a-$ muel 16.6.10. Dand being in the middeft of his Army, there came a fellow with curfing and rayling fpeeches, faying vato him, Come out thou murtherer, and withall, threw fones and duft at him: and one of the feruants of Dauid faide vnto his Maifter, shatl I goc and take off the boad of this Rayler? But Dauid very witcly and mildely anfwered his Scruant thus, It nay bee that the Lord hath fent him, and therefore let bim alone : but now we haue a faying, That fech and blood cannot endire fuch iniuries as heere youlec Danid did. But Ilay, thofe that will go to Heauen, mull not looke to be carried thi ther in a feather-bed, butby enduring iniuries, croffings, vexations, and eribulations: O then thinke on Hcaucn, and yet forget not Hell; prefume not, nor yet defpaire not; liue to die, and yer dic to liue: Oh then leade dhy life in truc humilitic, for fo thate thou vondoubedly efcape Hels damnation, and enioy Heancus cuerlatting faluation; whicl place the God: of gods vouclifafe vs all.

## Cighe. II.

## Dealaring the difference of fundry mens teaching, with a dirction for the entrance into the practife with thy weapons.

$S$ men of all arts trades and fciences, differ in arte and workmanfhip, ( as for example ) all Phyfitions doe not vfe one kind of purgation, nor all Surgions one manner of falue, noral writers write not alike, but to make a rchearfall of all artes it weretoo long, my meaning is fo many men fo many mindes, euen fo in this art of defence as the number which are experienced in it is infinite, cuen fo feuerall fathions doe exceede the number of infinite, fit were polible; for cuery man holdech his opinion to be beft in that fafhion which he hath been moft vfed vnto; although 2 man thew them many errours by good iudgement, yet it is as hard to withdraw them from their owne wil as it is to compell a Papiff from his religion, which he hath been alwayes trained vp vnto.

But the true skil of weapons once perfectly learned is neuer forgotten againe, for if any naan were to fighr forhis life, as by a familiar example I will tell you of thofe which haue been vnskilfull, yet haue had a fuddaine occafion to vee their weapons, and euen then fuddenly fummoning vp their wits, what defence they thould vfe for the fafegard of their liues, being fo fuddenly charged, doth not hee then as I faid remember himfelfe of the bef defence, or the beft trick, that eugr was fhewed him, for then is the time to fland him in
ftead, and then will vece it, although he neuer plaid nor neuer practifed in feanen yceres before.
Nay further, he which neuer learned one tricke but what nature beflowed, nor neuer had any other experience vfe nor pratilieat onc weapon nor other, but onely what he hath feene of orhers, by chance, where hee hath hapned to come : yet fuch a one vpon a prefent occafion being vrged thercunto, will inftantly cal to minde that fuch a time and fuch a time, I did fee fuch a man fight or play, and he was accounted a very good player, or a very tall man of his hands, and thus he lay or thus he defended himfelfe; Loc thus imitating for their defence that which they haue feene others doe before, another example which by experience I can fpeake of, and that is of fome whicl neurer did nor nener could hwim in all their liues, yet fuch at fometimes hauc been in danger of drowning, by chãce falling ouer boord into the fea, or into other deepe Riuers, where there was no hope of life but onely by. fwimming, fuch I fay being putto their fhifts, hauc remembred themlelues in the water, and fo by laboring themfelues I meane with their hands and their fect, 10 haue efcaped and faucd their liues. Now I fay if euery man before hand wercgrounded in skill with his weapons, $\&$ in the art of fwimming when they werc yong, then would either of them be the Ieffe fearefull, for what is bred in the bone, will neuer out of the flefh.
Yet herc one example more; take ayong plant, and fet him, and cone againe within a month, and you may pullhim vp wish cafe, but let him grow a yecre or two and he will be fodecpe rooted in the ground, fo that you cannot pull him vp for your heart, except you vie other meanes: euen fo of youth, if they giue their
sinds

18 The Schoole of Defence.
minds to good and laudable exercifes when they are yong, it were great pity that they fhold want encouragement, whereby it might take roote; but if their minds be giten to any idle or bad exercifes, it were good then that it were pulled vp in time, before it hauc taken any deep root. And fo I will here leane off, becaufe 1 thall haue occafion hereafeer to fpeake con:cerning thofe matters.

Chap. III.
Fearefullexamples of murther, with aduife
to asoid murther.

GEnerally three forts of men are hated for the moft part, and very much abhorred; that is to fay, the proud minded man, a coward, and a murtherer, bat efpecially a nurtherer, howfoener it be done : therefore moft vnhappy is he which killeche man cowardly, in a defperate humour, but if he doe it in his owne defence, or in a morning vpon a iuft quarrell in the field, and both being equally matched, then it may be the better tollerated both before God and man, yet I doe not well to fay fo; for Remans the 9 .it is faid, what art thow mbich doeft difpute with God, then why goe I about to make my tolcration in murther, when God hath giuen vs an expreffe commandement to the conerary, faying; thou /bals not kill Exodus 20. According to this faying, be which itnheth with the fword, Mall perifh with the fword;and likewife S. Paul giucth vs a good leffon faying; doe nothing without forefight and indgement. Becaufe I touch diuinity in many places of my booke, no duubt fome will lay what fhould fencers meddle with diuinity; but to anfwer

## The Schiole of Defencr.

you againe, ellery Chriftian ought to know the word, (indeed the fword is good) but pinch the beteet when they goelboth todgether, But to our matter' againe: thofe which feare God, and by chance happen into the company of a murcherer, therehairo will farc; and thair blood will tife, that they will inwardly, wifh they were ont of his company againe,for, many fintple inen dofeare a muriheror cuer after they haue once know him to commit a murther, yet diuersioneft men doe by chance happen into a murtherets company, when they wisuld beo glad to shift themelues fiom hinia= gaine; oras itwere to f puchim out'of their'prefence, in regard of his euill qualities, which is quarrellling, and taking exceptions vpon any litele occaftioi.iff any man alfo dodifecme to con trary $\alpha$ nuutheror, or a lithe croffe him in his fiwaggering, he will forthwidd breake out into thefe or fuch like wngodly fpeeché; faying; 1 haue killed a fan better man than' thy felfe'; fuch like words. will he fay with a brazen facejand da fony heart, liftedxp with the pride of his manhood sfot hic that is a murtherer dath thinke that he is the beftiman in the world, efpecially if he efcape the gallowes fo long $v$ ntill he hath killed two or three men:1 haue beca my felfd in company with many of theril bur I did nouer Ohremember fee any fruits $\mathrm{S}^{\text {r }}$ repentince in thein'; for when they of ood fell haue part the hands of the pittifull Iudge, then they yion cain thinke that chey are ciecred for clier, as well in this for nurther world as in the world to contic 3 and then will they fay if they did offend, they had the Law for it; but I know not how fo many of thein efcape the gallowes: there is a Prouerbe faich, foolifhpitty ouertbroweth towne and Citty. It thinke and am verily perfwaded, that a murtherer is accurf and hated both of God and man, yea I

The Schoole of Defence.
am alfo perfwaded that the houfe is accurf wherein they dwell, and the fhip wherein they faile at fea, mark their end, and you fhall fee that although they paffe the hands of men, yet God perfues them with the hue and crye of his vengeance, which followeth them, and apprehendeth them, and bringeth fome of thein to onekind of death, and fome to another ; as thefe few examples following thal declare, and theu maiftionfider of thens to thy benefit.

Firft Sir lohn Fitz : how wickedly and how cowardly did bitwith two or three of his men purfue and oucrtake Mafter Stammell, as he was ridinu from Teftok. in Deuogbibe, towards his owne houfe, this Maftes Stasnell was beloued both of rich and poore, hee was a good and bountifull houfe-keeper, and his vntimely death was lamented of thoufands, the occafion of the quarrell, was as I haue heard becaufe Mafter Stammell called Sir Iobe ritz. Tenant; for that fir cohn Fisz his father had vfed to pay him a matter of two fhillings a yeere: thif was nogreat caufo of quartel if it had been weighed ip the ballance ofdiferetion, confidering the great loue aud familiarity which had continued long time betwixt them, the whichalfo was the reafon that Mafter Stammell had, not of long time demanded the rent, nor did make any reckoning or account of it.But then both hauing appointed to meet at a merry making in Teftok onely to be merry, and there this vnforcunate word tenant proceeded out of Malter stampols mouth, which! fir Lelin tooke in vety great choller, Mafter Sansell perceiuing that hee had moo. ued him betooke himfelfe prefently to his horfe, and riding homewards hauing but only his foorman with him, before he had rode two miles, fir Iobn Fitz with two
ewo or three ofhis men, being well horft ouer-tooke Mafter Stannell and there compafling him about fom before him and fome behind him, moft cowardly and defperately murthored him; and vpon thar fir Sohn fled into France, but before one yeere was paff his friends procured a pardon for him, infomuch that he came home againe, and to cuery mans feeming was as qui. et, but the hue and cry of Geds vengeance was in his confcience, and three or fowre yeeres after vpon Losdon way there apprehended him, as you thall heare; for then and there moft cruelly and diuelifhly he killed his hofte, which was a very honeft man, and afterwards moft delperately with his owne hands rooke bis rapier and murthered himfelfe; yet thus much $L$ can fay of fir lobn Fite he wasa proper man, and for the fpace of thirty yecres he liued orderly, to the geffe of the world, for he was well beloued in his country, and if he had fo continued to the end, it had been well, but what hould 1 fay, a man may be an honeft man thirty yeers, yea forty yeers, and yet be a knaue at the laft.
Another example was that of one Hocket ofplimouth, who looking out at a window, and efyying one Captaine Robinfon comining downe the freet, and he hauing an old quarrell to the faid Robinfon which began at fea, this Hocket flept to his dote with his rapier ready drawn, and ftanding within his owne houfe vntill Captainc Robinion was come iuft againf his door, he there without fpeaking one word ran him through with his rapier, and afterwards was clecred by the Iudge of this world, but after his comming out of the gayle, he went to fea,Malter in a man of war, and within ten dayes after he, was gone fiom Plimoth to fea, the G 2

22
The Schoiole of Difenct.
firt fhip they met withall thot but one thot, and yet killed this Hocket, and no man in the Thip killed nor hurt but only this murtherer.

Likewife in Plimoth one Captaine Treherne and Captaine Egles fell out about nothing in a manner, the caule was for that one of them was denied lodging, where the other did lie by the good wife of the houre, for it may bee the affected the one better then the other, and two dogs and one bone commonly can neuer agree well together, but they fell out about fuch a trifing matter, and at the doore in the ftrecte they fought, and in the firn bout, Treberne was downe in the gutter, and Eagles there in prefence of many might haue killed him, but ftaied his hand, and fuffered him to rife againe, but then Trebear*e affaulted Captaine Eagles moft furioufly, and it fo chanced that with a blow Eagles rapier brake, and then running into a houfe to faue himfelfe, Traberne runhim into the backe and killed him, and afterwards he receiued his tryall for it, but by the mercy of the Iudge he was difcharged of that matter. After his eomming ous of the gayle, he prefently got a crue of twenty eight perfons, and a hip, and went a rouing vpon the coaft of France, where they were all taken, and euery man of them hanged in Frame, now I doe verily perfwade my felfe that many of them might baue been liuing at this day, if they had not hapned into this murcherers company.

Allo, one Barslet, who appointed the field with an other, after oneboat, his enemy requefted hin to holde his hands, that he might breathe, which hee confented vnto; but as they both foode ftill, this Bartletiodainly charged his weapon vpon the other,

## The Schoole of Defonce.

23. 

and ranne him through, that he died prefently, and then Bartlet fled and ecicaped away for the fpace of feuen yeares, but the huy and crie of Gods vengenace followed him, infomuch, that hee came againe to Plinouth of his owne accord, thinking that all was well, and forgotten; bur there he was apprehended, and afer the law had had his courfe vpon him, Gods vengeance left him not, but broghthim oo Plimouth againe, and mortly after, anocher did challenge this Bartlef, they both mette in the field, and there was Bartler killed, not farre from the place where he had killed the orherbefore, and he chat killed him,fied away, and is not taken as yec.
Now, to end thefe examples with the lamentableft Renember hiftoric that eucr pemue did write, for a more ciucll this cxample. murther was ncuer commitecd, of king Rechard the third, in the Chronicles, there may your reade it more $\begin{aligned} & \text { If his munke } \\ & \text { nene }\end{aligned}$ at large, that after hec had committed his brothers ingle, yeris two children to the Tower, hee was not contented, may make but would haue the liues of thefe poore Infants, the yournite. doers of this hellifh and cruell murder, were fir lames Tirrell, Ailes Forreff, and Lobn Dighton, thefe three laying their heads together, what manner of execution were beft to be vfed in that Tragedie, they con- Feace.ll viscluded in the end, to ftifle them in their beds in the a a murthecor. dead time of the night, and fo with the cloathes and pillowes which were about them, thefe chree murderers preffing them downe voder the eloaths (as aforefaid) bereaued then quickely of theirliues; now,after this, what a hellith horrour had this King in his confcience, yea it fo vexed and tormeneed his fpirits, that he was neuer well nor ar quiectecping nor waking; for in the night hee would fodainely itart out

## 24

The Schoole of Defenca
of his bed, and goc vpand downe the Chamber like 2 madde man; likewile in the day he neuer thought himfelfe fure, but alwayes feared treafons, his eies rowling continually about him, and oftentimes hee would clappe his hand vpon his dagger, when there was no need, and aferwards he was vanquifhed with his enemies; and on the other three God fhewed his vengeance Iomwhat in this world. For Sir /ames Tirrell was beheaded afterwards at the Tower for trea. fon, but not for that mater; and Miles Forreft had a confuming and a lingring life, for his feth did rotte away by pecce-meale, and fo miferably died; Lobs Dighton liued in great hatred, and was abhorred and pointed at of all that knew him, and at the laft died in great poucrty and mifery. But I referre you vnto the Chronicle, as aforefaid, which declares it moro atlarge : and fo I will goe on a little further to the fame effect.
Though the Law doe fpare and not cut off a murtherer fo foone as hee hath deferued death; yee I fay the horrour of his murthering confcience will fo bee gnawing at his bloudy heart, vntill it hath eaten and confumed him to nothing; alfo the horrible paines of hell will by vifions thew, and fo plainely appeare vnto him, ftill founding in his eares fuch a peale, that hee many times will thinke that the diucll is come from hell; for folong as hee liueth, his fpirits will be fodiftempered and affrighted, that in the night, many times feuerall vifions will appeare, fometimes fpirits with vgly hapes, and lometimes a multitude of weaponed Officers ruffeling in to apprehend hint, and fometimes the ghof of fhim which was murthe. red, iofomuch that many times hee will fweate for
feare,

The Schoole of Defence.
feare, with running, labouring, and friuing to kecpe himfelfe out of their gripe, and in a word, afraide he will be (in a maner) of cuery graffe; and whercas before he was accounted for a merrie companion, is now ouercome with wilde lookes and melancholic thoughts, taking no ioy, in wealch, wife, and clijldren. Loe, this is a life, but it is as wearifome as bell vnrill death doth catch him, for death waitech vpon a murtherer as a halier doth ypon the ftealer; as for example of fir Iobin Gilbert euer after the killing of fir PAbn Burrowes, of which the world faith it was an honourable quarrell, and yet in the night his fricids reported, thathe would fodainely ftart out of his bed, boing fore affrighted, he knew not at what, he liued not many yeares after, but yer died in bis bedde; fo like wife mafter:.Hely killed captaine Fof cus vpona fodaine quarrell, meeting in the frecte in Plimmouth, $y$ et, by the courfe of the Lawe, was acquitred for it; but aferwards, folong as hee liued, hee liued a dif:contented life, and was nener well in his ponficienco vneill death tooke him. Now all the fe were buryong men, and in the middef of their ycares, to the eye of the world, either of them mighthaue lived many yeares longer, and yet not haue becne accounted for olde ment.
I could lpend much paper and time with a number of examples touching this matter, but I will here conclude, and leave the reft to thy daily experience, which thine cares may heare, and thine eics daily fce (almoft in cucry place) farre more fearfull examples, concerning this former mater, the more is the pitty; but what becommeth of them after this life is ended may feeme doubffull, butIleauc that to the fecret
wifedome and power of Almightie God; but there is no queftion to be made of thofe which leade a wicked and vngodly life, but they thall have a wicked and an rngodly end; as on the contrary fide, thore that leade a godly and an vpright life, fhall make a good and godly end : for if a nan doe well, he fhall haue well, but if he doe ill, he thall haue ill. More concerning this matter you may reade towardes the end of the eight chapter following.

But I thinke it not amiffe, heerc in this place, to thew you alitle concerning murthers done in fecret; for as the Prouerb gocth, Murther will noc be hiddet albeit for a time God doth fuffer a murtherer to live and reigne without apprehienfion, yet in the end he makes the diuell bring foorth his feruant, to receine his wages witt thame enough, 2 murcher can not be kept Aill clofe : for the Lord fometimes doth bring a murther to light that hath beene done in fecret, by the birds of the aire, by water, by fire, by dogges, as inbriefe by thefe examples thal planily bedemonftrated.

It hath beene knowne that a murchered carkaffe hath beene throwne into the Sea when it was flowed to the full, thereby thinking, that with the ebbehe would haue beene carried away, but the water being gone, the murthered carkaffe was found where it was firft throwne in.

Alfo, I knew a woman that was arraigned and con: demned, for murthering her childe, and well the deferued the fame; for fhee cutte the childe into fmall peeces, and then the tooke and threw them vnder a hote furnace where fhe was a browing : but when the had done brewing, and the fire our, there was found

The Scboole of Defence.
27
the peeces of the childe in the afhes, fo freh (ina maner) as it was throwne in.

Likewife, in Worcefterfhire were two brothers, the one a very honeft man, and by his honeft means and good induftry, had goten to himfelfe a pretty houte, and crownes in his purfe. But his brother being a carelefic vnthrift, and enuying at his brothers prolperous cftate, yet kept he it to himfalfe, vntill finding opportunitie, one night (but they nwo being in the houfe together;) this graceleffe vnthrift forthwith knockt his brother on the head, which when hee had done, hee cutte off his legges, and buryed him vader the harth in the chimney, and layd the nones againe very artificially, hoping thert that all the goodes were his owne; and when the neighbors enquired of him for his brother, he tolde them that hee was gone a iourney farre off, to vifite fone of his friends. But (a fhort tale to make) this murtherer made a feaft, and inuired his ueighbours and his friends; and when they were allaffembled together within the houfe, as they fate by the fire fide, they perceived the fones in the chimney to rife, and the fire tumbled downe out of the chimney, for the heat of the fire made the dead carkaffe fwell : and then fearch being made, the carkaffe was found, and the murtherer taken and executed. God I befeech him bleffe cuery good man from murther, and frombeing murthered.

Ihaue knowne many times, that fome (through ignorance) haue committed murcher, in parting of a fray, I meane fuch as are not experimented in the Lawe, norhane noreafon in fucha cafe; for many times they which fhould keep the paace, com-
mit murther ignorantly, I meane, in comming in, either with club or halberd, or fuch like weapon, and comming behind one of the two that are in fight, Atiketh him on the head, when hee little expectect any hurt of any other, but from him which hee is now in hand withall, when indeed in fuch a cafe, they ought to frike downe the weapons of thofe which are fighting or breaking them, but not ftrike them. Whofe mindes are occupied with fury one againft the other, and little expecting a mifchiefe to come from one which they neuer offended. Againe fome in parting of a fray will run in betwixt them, and hold his familiar friend, and leaue the other at liberty, and by this meanes he which hath been at liberty hath killed him which is foholden, when many times it had not fo fallen out, if they had been bothlet alone to Chift for themfelues, therefore men ought to haue experience and to vfe difcretion in the parting of a fray, for fools do neuer fore-caft of a mifchiefe beforehand, but wife men preucht it beforeit falls.

Wherefore I would wifh whatfocuer thou bee, which readeft this leffon, to remember it, and regard the life of a man, although many are at fome times very vnruly, yet let no abufe caule thee to commit murther, neither in thy owne quarrell, nor in parting of any other : for I haue heard and knowne many times that a fma!! froke hath been giuen with no intention of murther, yes it hath fallen out to the contrary, yea and contrary vnto all mens expectation, which have feen that a man with his filt or with a riding rodde, or with a penny loafe, and other things ofleffe danger, and yet fome haue dyed being ftucucisen therewithal.

The Schoole of Defence.
29
Chap. IIII.
which(beweth wnto whom skill belongeth, with) the frwits of drunkenneffc.

corsing AAny will fay that skill in weapons is 2 He whichean good thing, and fie to be learned of eucry foucrnhinman, yet all men will lay it is pitty that a but :lhat nuit man without gouernment thould know proceed from the fecret skill in weapons, for indeede God.
skil doth moft chicfly of all belong to a man thar hath wit and difcretion to gouern ir, that when he hath skill knoweth how to vfe it as it ought to bee vied, for a good thing learned and abufed were better refufed and neuer learned: for fome when they haue a little more skill then cuery common man, thea will they thinke by brauing euery man which commeth in theis company, by fwaggering is with proud brags and high lookes, yet I haue known fuch fwaggering companions which haue had more haire then wit, meete with their match and carry away the blowes with difgrace, and yet themfelues beginners of the quarrell when they might haue liued quict if they would.

Therefore he which weareth the greateft whitle is not the beft Mariner, nor he the beft man that makerh the greatelt brags, for fome will braue a better man then themfelues, and fwagger it our, and yet fo litele in themfelues that they will fcarce hold the touching when they come to the fone to bee tryed, yet euery fubiect ought if occafion ferue to fight for his King and country, if it be for the Gufpells fake, and fometimes in defence of their owne reputation and credit.

The Schoole of Defence.
Nowalthough this art of defence is fo fie and ne: ceflary a thing for allmen to be learned, yet withall I doc cxhort and earnc!? ly intreat all fuch as hauc skill to veit in that fathion as it ought to be vfed, for if 2 man had twenty good qualities \& yet if he be a drunkard, that one ill quality ouerthroweth all the reft, like as when a Cow gincth a good fope of milke, and then afeerwards Atriketh it downe with her foote : fhe is as much to bee blamed for the loffe, as commended for the gift, cuen fo a man without gouernment groweth out of fauour both with God \&e man, for many a man without difcretion and iudgement many times doth fall out with his familiar fricud, and fo dare one another into the field, prefently vpon the fuddaine falling out. Now if wit be in neither of them, then a thoufand to one but murther is committed, for a man with skill may better fight with a hundred in the morning one afrer another, then withthree in an afternoone, vpon drinke or hot blood; for if you forbeare to kill thou maif be killed thy felfe, if thou take thy opportunity thou maift eafily kill a drunkard in his owne comming in, for he will come in without feare or wit : for drinke maketh a very coward challenge the beft man liuing, for in drinke I haue knowen many paffe their words to meere in the field vpon fmall occafion, if with difcretion the quartell were rightly confidered vpon; but their owne felues in the morning when they haue their right wits about them, then do they many times repent, and with the match were to make, and that their words were vnfpoken which they fpake the night before. Yet neuertheleffe when a man hath paffed his word howfoeuer things fall out, hee muft and will an- Loe thefe are the fruits of drunkenneffe, al other vices may be leff, bueno bridle will rule a drunkard, nor no counfell willimakc him forgoe his daunken and fwinith life, drunkenneffe is the mother of ail vices, for drunkenneffe doth beger and breede all manner of deadly fins, for by inordinate drinking thy foule is endangered, thy body is fufected, thy vadertanding banifhed, thy manhood diftafted, thy fubtance wafied, and beatlyneffe relembled, and thy bufineffe negledted, therefore leaue that one vice, and allo other will flic away with it : for as I faid before it is the only breeder and maintainer of quarrelling and fighting, by fighing God is difpleafcd, and the Kings Lawes broken; againe if murther be committed, thou loofent thy goods, and cadangereft thy life; if thou loofe it nor, yet thou fhate live defpifed, \& hatd of all honelt minds thatknowes thec, fo that thy life will be more loathfome then death, therefore not to fight at all is beft, except thou be charged ypon contrary to thy expectation, then defend thy felfe, and yet feare as much to kill as to be killed.

## Chap. V.

The cuufe of quarrells, and what preparation yon ougho to be prepared with to anfwer a challinge.


Iffention, quarrells, and murther growes many tines vpon finalloccafions, yca fo fimall, that when it commeth to the eares and ro bee difpured vpou amongt the the wife, when they hauc skand it ouce yeclds vp thcir verdit, faying fich and fuch are fallen $\mathrm{H}_{3}$
out


#### Abstract

The Schoole of Defence. out for the value of a rum, and fuch and fuch haue killed one another for iuft nothing, is not lieere more Be wel aduifcd madneffe? yet I will not fay but at one time or another beforc thouido a mans reputation may be fo neerly touched, that it for a man will cannos Atand with his credit to pocket it vp, although be as good as bis word if it do con him his caufe almoft ofall quarrells, yet being wronged, it life : for it is a can not fand with a mans credite, to keepe his weacolvards tricke to cric peccaui, pon in his fleathe; neyther doe I counsell all men to oo cric precault, or leaft infight pocket vp all iniuries which fome will proffer them, the nex mot the next mor-but to anfwer a good quarrell, not onely with words ning. but with deeds, as followerh; for the further inftruction. Whofo is honourably challenged vnto fin. gle combate, the challenged may make choice of his weapon, and likewife of the time when, and of the place where. Likewife, the challenged may choofe to fight on foote or on horfe backe, which tor his beft aduantage hee fhall thinke fitteft : now allo the challenged is to confider well the qualitie of the Challenger, that thereby hee may make the better prouifion of fuch furniture as may ferue for his owne defence, and likewife to terrifie and hurt the challenger. Now, if the challenger be chollericke and hattie, then charge thy poynt direaly vpon him, that if hee preafe vpon thee, he may come vpon his own death: but before thou goeft into the field, difcharge thy duty and confcience towards God, afwell as in weapons, for thy beft aduantage, otherwife it can not choofe but be to thy body dangerous, and vnto thy foule doubtfull, and a moft principall note is this to be obferued, for thou artnot fure whether eucr thou fhalereturne againe or neuer.


Remember your skill, when you are at play, or in fight, for I hane knowne many, when their fight and play is ended, they doe remember, that with this tricke, or with that tricke they might haue defended themfelues, and either hure or difgraced their cne. my, but many (through madneffe and fury) remember it not till it be too late.

Ifyou be both skilfull in the falfe play, then I hold it good tor both to play vpon the true play, for it booted bur litele to vie fille play to one thar knowes how to profferit, and how to defend it; for it is ill halting before a Cripple, yet I will not fay but tho beft of all may be deceiued by falfe play, but ecfeccially falfe play may fand thee in great fead, vpon thofe which are not come vito the ful perfection of knowIedge: Againe, one may hanc skilin one kind offalfc play, but not in all.
Now whether thy enemy be skilfull or not, it is a very eafie matter to know fo foone as hee beginnetly to chargc his weapon, if thou haddeft no former knowledge before hand. If two crafty knaues meete at dice, if either of them hift in falfe dice, the other will perceiuc it prefensly, and fo they will know each other to be gancflers, bue they will gine ouer the fooner, with fanall Ioffe cach to other, referring themflues to their better furtuncs, and hoping to mecte with eafier gamefters; eucn fo I wifh all inen, if they perceiuc themflues to be hardly matehed, the wifer of them to yeelde vpon compofition, after reafonable rriall made each one of the other, before any grcat hurt be done; for the beft man that cuer breathed, hath, and may meere wich his equall: and when swo good men mecte, the conqueft will be hardly
and dangeroully ended on the one fide, except Difcretion be a mediator to take vp the matter, before it come to the worft, if by friends it be not ended before hand; but if thou canft hurt thy enemy, yes, although it be but a little, or vnarme him of his wea. pon, which thou mayelt very cafily doc, if thou doe fight with good difcretion. And eyther of thefeate accounted for a victorie; alfo, take this for a generall rule alwayes, keepe thy bodic within compaffe of true Defence, confidering otherwife, that the danger is great in that part of the bodic which lieth molt difcouered, and is neareft vino thine enemie.
Now when thy enemy doth affault thee, and is lifting vp his weapon to difcharge at thec, be not then to prepare thy Defence, but be ready before hand to defend ewery part of thy bodie, according to my directions, as when you come to it you thall fee more plainely. For thou doft not know before hand where theblow will light: As thrinking vp of fhoulders is no payment of debes, no more will winking or blinking defend thy carkaffe, as thofe which haue no skil willwinke : therefore, againe, and againe, I fay, bee prepared with skill before hand. Moft fure it is the blow mult hauc his fall : but at cuery weapon I haue fhewed how to defend it, therefore the Defender muft bee well experienced before hand with his defence, at fich a weapon as he meaneth vfually to carrie, that when the blow doth light, thou mayeft bee in thy defence, not to defend thine enemies blowe onely; butalfo to anfwere him againe in the time of aduaneage, for a quicke anfwer fheweth good cunning. Nor to know the true place for the holding of of thy weapon, that is notall, butalwaycs fo long

The Schoole of Deferte.
asthou art within thy enimies danger continue them in their place, except it be at the very infant time when thou goeft about to offend thine enemy, and that murt be done with a very good diferetion, and thy weapon mult bee reconered vp againe into his place nimbly. Now if thy eaemy doe difcouer fome part of his body, that, to thy fecming, lieth veryo. pen, yet be not too haitic in offering play, though the baite be neuer fo faire, bite notarit too rafhly or vnaduifedly, left like the foolith Fifh yoube taken with the hooke which lieth couered with the baite; for if your enemy finde your weapon or weapons out of the place of true defence, yea if it be but an inch too high, or toolowe, too wide, or too narrow, it is afmuch as concerneth thy.life : if thoube matched withone that is skilfull, neuer ouerlay thy felfe with a heauy weapon, for nimbleneffe of bodic, and nimblenefse of weapon are two chiefe helpes for thy aduantage in play. Againe, and againe I fay, ftike not one blow in fight, at what weapon foeuer thou fighteft withall, except it be a wrift blowe, and that you may afwell doe with a rapier, as with a fword, for a wrift blow confumerh but alittle time, yer better vfe no blowe at all, but continually, thrult after thruft: for (in my minde) hee is a man ignorant and very vnvoskilfull that will bee hurt with a blow, and if thou make an affaule vpon thy enemy doe not tarry by ir, to maintaine it, for in making the affault diftance is broken, wherefore recouer backe into your guardand diftance againe fo fooue as you can, and alwayes let your ees be on your enemies face, and not altogether on the point, then youmay be deceiued, by che fwift motion of the hand, for the motion of the hand is fwif-
ter then the eye or foot, many will fes their eyes ypon their enemies point,or vpó his hand for the auoiding of this error, the beft remedy is daily exercife and praaife one with another, and to play with more then one, otherwife thou wilt neuer come vnto true deféce for it is good to be acquainted with euery mans farthion, for that tricke which will hit one will not hit another, and therefore be well experienced not onely in the true play but in the falfe; I meane for the defence and offence of both, that if thou canft not preuaile with the one then vfe the other:yet rake heed of hafly aduenturing in, leaft thou with the foolifh bird which flyech inte the lime bufh, and being in, the more the ftriucth, the fatter fhe is; then make no mure haft then good fpeed, leaff thou be taken in thy owne folly, for many times hafte maketh wafte: if thou hooref at a marke if the marke be newer fo faire, yet if thou fhoot haftily withour diferetion, thou maift oftner miffe then hit;alfo I doe aduife thee not to determine to anfwer every thruft or blow home which thy enemy doth affaule thee with; but to anfwer it fomehing fhort vnill thou perceiue whether he haue any falfe play or not, otherwife if thou make thy anfwer home, he may deceive thee by falle play:now ifboth be experienced in the erue play and falfe then you might continue in fight a whole day, if it were ponfible to endure fo long and haue no hore: if thou have a elote trilted daggef and a rapier, 1 hold them more furer then a fword and dagger, bur with the skilfatl there is no danger in elther of them; againe in fighre inan need not vfe halfe the skil which he may learne, the fecond point of haw. king is to holde faft, and the fecond and chicfett point in this exercile is to leartre to defend thy felfe, and to

The Schaole of Defence.
wfe it when thou haf occafion, then remamber where about thou art.

And let no illurions canfe thee to looke about thee when thou art within chy enemies diffance, leaf hee take the aduanage when thou doft nor fee him, or before thou be aware, as many doc: for after when thou haft the wound, itis but a folly for thec to lay, I had thought he would not haue frucken me fo cowardly : I remember a talc as I heard our of Gcrmany, thus it was, the Mafter and viher of a fchool had vpon occafion appointed the feld, and their weapon was each of them a two handed fword, and ineeting at the place appointed, faid the Mafter thou are not lo good as thy word, the V Ther asked him why; marry faid he thou promifeft to bring no body with thee, and yet looke yonder what a number of people are comming towards thee, the viher no fooner locked about, but the Mafter fmote off his head, and afterwards meeting with fome of his friends faid, I haue taught my mana new tricke this morning faid he, which he neuer learned before. Loe thus he killed him by policy, but it it was no manly tricke, neither doe I commend this manner of murther: in my mind the Mafter had been beter that he had denied to goe into the field with his man, then to haue fuch a clog of murther voon his confcienceby killing of him, by what meanes or policy foener;for every one ought to remember that he mutt not take vengeauce, when and where he may, fo oft as an inury is profered him, concerning this there is a good example to bee imitated by ftrong beafts which neuer urne againe when little curs nume barking after them, for the mighty or skilfull ought to vio their power moderately, forfo they may the better vfe I 2

## $3^{8}$ <br> The Schoole of Defence.

continually, for although fighting be the triall of cunning and skill in weapons, and many men thereby prooue their force, and yet afterwards becone great frinds, for fighting is nothing dangerous being both wary and skilfull:but now in my mind much deceiued are thofe which thinke that a quarrell begune with words cannot he ended but with weapons, but my opinion is that folong as no blowes paffe but outly words, yet words are the caufe of many quarrells, for words will ting worfe then a netrle, and pricke decper then a thorne, and cut more keener then a fword, yet for all that let wifedome and reafon guide thy hand and after you haue croffed one another with two or three croffe words, then fall into a ciuill kind of reafoning the matter, and not in fury fuffering it to grow into any further quarrell, for a little fparke at the firft is eafily quenched, euen fo vpon the drinking of a cup of wine or a pipe of Tobacco; or vpon fuch a light matter of no importance many a quarrell is begun; now in fuch a cate I would with the wifer of the two in his good difcretion, to yceld firft, and fo to end it without further grudging, for reafonable fpeeches may be a full fatisfaction where a fimall offence is committed.
Bur now if one of the parties in a fubborne frowardneffe will not yeeld but rather goe into the field with a defire to kill the other, now if there be never a one of them wife, murther is committed and at leifure repented:but he which firt beginnech the quarrell, or giueth the fint box on the eare, ranhly or vnaduifedly, vpona fmall matter as aforefaid, is worthy and well delerueth to be anfwered againe with three, or clfe with chebaftiado. And to match with this I will tell

The Schoole of Defence.
39
your tale of Fricr, who in his fermon aid ifone giue thee a blow on the one eare, turno the ocher and taks: another, and a lufy feruingman bearing him, after the fermon was ended, hee came vito the Frier and faid, fir youmade a good Sermon, bue yet in my mind there was fmall reafon in one efflon that you gaue $\mathrm{vs}_{\mathrm{s}_{1}}$ what was that faid the Frier, marry quoth the feruing. $\operatorname{man}$ that if one giuc mea blow on the eare, I fhould turne the other, and cake anorher: why faith the frie: the Scripture commandeth vs fo to doe, bue quoth the feruing man will you follow the feripture herein, yes marry that I will faid the Frier, with that the fer:-uing-man yp with his fift and gave him a good boxe on the eare; the frict turined the othcr, and tooke another, buenow fuith the Scripture (quoth the Frier) looke what you would hane others do to you, doe the like to them; looke what meafire y ou meate, the like meafure hall be meafired to you againe, with heape and thruft, and running ouer, and with that the Frier tooke a good crab-treecudgell and beat the feruing. man well fauouredly, and fo to our former mater againe. Doth every blow that is ginen deferne the anfwering in the ficli, I fay not butfirft requite the blow againe, as before faid, for 1 hatue valued the rate of the firft beginner fo low as may be, for he is worthy to be requited, not in the fame manner, but in a more open fafhion, requite the boxe againe, and then being equalled of the firf wrong; lectiom which begame the game reckon of his penay-worths, and if in caltieg vp his reckoning hec fiude hinvfelfe a loofer, lec him fit downe by his loffe, and learne to make a wifer bargaine an other time; but if it cannot be fo cnded, then it munt be anfwered orherwife as occafion fhallferns.


#### Abstract

Tbe Schoole of Defense. $4^{\circ}$ Now if the lie be gisen before you grow into chol. ler with a rach foolifh fellow; firt, confider in what cale the party is, which giucth the lie, before thou Atrike; for in drinke or in furic I haue feene one giue the lie, which would not hane done it at an other time, I meane when hee had his right witeos about him. Well, but fay a nian, at fuch time, and in fuch a cafe, doe giue the lie, fome mad heads will fay, that Therefore doe e it deferueth the fabbe prefently; but I neter knew awhich may bee ny man fabbe or kill another, ypon what occafiou repented of to coeuer, buit he was forie for it afterwards: That ma- morrow. riner is not to be commended which getteth his cunning by many thip-wreckes; nor that man is not to be praifed for his gouernement which getteth it by his punithment, which he hath for the killing of two orthreemen

Now, vpon the recciuing the lie, if the fabbe be not giuen, fome giddic headed kill-calues will fay, that fuch a man tooke the lie, and did not anfwere is with a ftabbe, wherefore hee is a coward; but now I fay, and this is my opinion, he fheweth the beft wir, and moft valour, which fecing a man out of the way. (as we terme it) will giue a milde and a quiet anfwere vnto a froward queition : alfo the wifer fort will commend the patience of him that can beare with one that is paft reafon; for all menknow, that hee which commiteeth murther, will alterwards wifh with bitter seares, that hee had couqueted his affections, and ftayed his handes, I meane, if there be any fparke of grace at all in him; and the firf which friketh, many times loofeth his life, therefore though thou cannor rule thy tongue, yer haue a care to rule thy hands before a mifchiefe be done, for hee which committeth


murther, when hee commeth to examination, it is but a firple excufe to fay, The orher gaut mee the lie, and called me knane, and I could not brooke is. Thero is a prety example, and worth the noting cons cerning luch a matter (as I haue heard it) and thus it was. A ludge fitring in iudgement againt a murderer, who anfwered for himfelfe faying, and it pleafe you my Lord, hee gane inee the lie, and called mee knaue. Why faid rhe ludge, wilt thoukllla nan for that? call meknaue, and give me tlie lie : the ludge being importunate, in the end, the murtherer faid, You are a knaue, and you dolie; then the ludge tooke the skirt of his coatc and thooke it, and faid, Lord, now what ani I the worfe? but euerie man can notbe Co patient: although fone will kecpe company feauen yeares, and yet nener gine any caule of quarre!! : yet fome againe will upon alitele drinke, or vpon a fmall occafion quarrell, fwagger and fight almont in cuerie company they come into; there is a Prouerbe goeth, He which hath an ill name, is halfe hanged: Before he commeth to the Batie, another Prowerbe touching our former matter faith, Hee which is accounted for, an earely rifer, may lie a bed till eleatuen of the clocke : euen fo hee which hath triod his manhoode, afterwards the world will indge and fay, that he is a matio of his hands, and that he dare fighe ypon a good occafion; but if he make a common occupaslott of fighting, hee will then bee accounted for a common quarreller, and his friends will refufe his company many times for doubt of his quarrellivg, and yet hee fhall newerbe accounted, more thena man againe. Hee which is quartelfonie frall ofuthtimes meete with his match; but if a tried fellow doe

Tbe Scboole of Defertce.
at fometimes forbeare when hee is wronged or chal: lenged, the wifer fort will neuer account the worfe manhoode in him; therefore except it be vpon a moft open and great abufe, let Patience be thy buckler, and a faire tongue thy fword, and alwayes have a care in the beginning what wilbe the end ; for a mifchiefe fometimes happeneth in an houre which happeneth not in feauen yeares againe, but Oh thrice happie were that man, which towards the latter end of his dayes, can withouca paire of lying lips fay, I thanke my God, I neuer bare malice, nor I neuer iniurioufly wronged any man, in thouglar, word, or deed in all my life.

Char. Vi.
Diuerfe reafons or introductions to bring thee sbe better vnto the knozoledge of thy meapos.


F thou doeft meane to pradife after my direction, then put thy weapons in their right place, looking not onely to the piCure, but to the words going before and after, likewife, frame your head, bodie, foore, and hand, according to my direction (as it followeth) after the firt piaure; for if either your weapons, or any part ofyour bodie be out of their place: yca, though it be butan inch too high, an inch too lowe, too wide, or too narrow, it is as much as your life is wordh; If your enemie be very skilfull and willing withall : thercfore, when thou gocf to practife, readesicaduifcdly, with vnderttanding, for I could hauc of guards at cuerie wespon', but it would haue beene an intricate peece of worke, and ueedeleffe for cuery common man to know.

For as fome Scrilueners can write twentic kinds of hands, yec one or two will ferue the turne; bur the more fortes being well written, are the more to bee commended, but to have an entrance into many, and not to doe one well, is not worth commendacions : cuen fo one guard perfectly learned at cuerie weapon, may feruc thec for thy true defence whileft thou liuef, againft all other guards.
It is but little auaileable to thec, if thou fee a good Scrinener write, except thou take the penne and practife to write, as hee doth; euen fo, it booteth the but litele, that wouldeft be skilfull of thy weapon, if thou doft fee two skilfull men play except theu take wcapons and practife to do as they haue done before thee.

Againe, it is not enough for him that would write wcll, to write his copiebut once ouer, and folcaue, no more muft thou, if thon wilt hauc skill in tiny weapons, thou muft not giue oaler with playing of one bowe, bue thou muft exercife it many times, and praAtife it often.

And if aman write well, and exercife it ncuer fo much, yet hee can aeuer exceed, well writen; cuen fo in skill of wcapons a man may be perfect, and play well; but whea thou haft lcarned the true and perfect skill with thy weapons, thou mait exercife for thing health and recreation, but thou halt never paffechac word, well plaid.
Alfo, he which writech much, and doch not regard
his coppie, but writeth after his owne will, I thinke it were ftrange for fuch a Scholler to write well, but he will alwaies write a ragged hand: even fo hee that gettech him lilts and cudgells, and goeth about to learne of his owne head without direction of one that is skilfull, it were better that he had never play. ed, if afterwards he goe to learne; for he mult firlt vilearne that which he hath learned, which will bee very hard to be done without great paines taking.

Now he which writeth a good Secretaric hand, and then afterwards he goeth to learne Roman hand, or Courthand, or any other the like, bee doth not thercby loofe his Sccretary; burif hee can write all kinde of hands, then may he vee moft, that which hee likethbeft, or thinketh fittef: ecuen fo, he which hath (by his practice) gotten good skill, and yet being of an other mans teaching, it is of anether manner of teaching, and I will not fay but that it may be fo good orbetter then mine : yet hee which learneth my rules or followeth my directions, it can not hinder him any whit at all, but ifhee hate once gotten them by good and perfect pravife, ifhee like them not, may goc to his oldefathion againe, or learne of any other afterwards.

Yet againe, as the obferuing of a true diftance in a Scriuener betweene eucry line, is commendable in his writing, fo it be done without ulung of it, which commeth by much practife; euen fo in true skill in fight, dift ance is a molt excellent thing, and the principalleft thing of all, next vnoo the guard to be obferued and kept, and it muft be gotten by great praGife.

Againe, when you learne to write at the firf, you

The Schoole of Defence.
write leafurely, but with much practife your hand co. meth to be fwifter; euen fo, with often vec of thy weapon, thy hand will come to defend cither blow, or thruft more readily ormore fpeedily then at the fint beginning of thy practife, albeit thoube hewen how to defend; and though thou haue the realon perteetly in thy head, and knoweft when an other docth it well, yet without practife thou canft neuer be skil. full in defence of thy felfe.

Alfo, hee which writeth, and with his penne doth Sputter his paper with incke, a Scholler will thinke, it it be not a great blot, it is a fmallmater, but a Scriucner will fay, it is a great fault; euen fo, if thy weapon or any parr of thy body be out of the right place, yea, though it be butalitle, yet it will feeme to him that hath skill, as much as a great blotre doth so a Scrimener in a coppic Booke.

Moreoucr, he which learneth to write, muft continually looke to his coppic, and muft write according to it; for one letter, or one line well written, is better then a great deale of incke and paper fpoiled, and not one letter well made : cuen fo, one blow, or one thruft performed orderly, I meanc, in his due time, and likewife to the right place, is better then an bundred vnorderly done.

Furthermore, if in writing an Obligation, a Scriucner doe write one letter of Roman hazid, and another of Secretary, another of Courthand, it will nos be feemely, nor commendable, but with what hand you beginne with, to end with the fame; enen fo you may frame your felfe, fomtimes into one guard, and fometimes into an other, taking heed alwayes, that you oblerue the famac defence which belongeth

46 The Schoole of Defence.
to the guard; for if you are in one guard, and youvfa the defence of another,fo you may deceive your felfe (for euerie guard differeth in defence and offence) and berwixt cuerie blow, and euery thruft, and cuerie guard which I haue heere defribed in this Booke: there is as great oddes as is betwixt Secretarie hand, Court hand, and Roman hand: nay the feuerall difference of guards are more in number then there are Seuerall kindes of hands in writing, yea many more then any Fider can play lefions vpon his infrument, and the nature of the guards do differ as much as one leffon from another; wherefore thofe that thinke one defence ferueth for defence of all guards, are afmuch deceiued, as they that thinke there is bur one kinde of leffon to be played ypon all inftruments : for that feuerall kindes of leffons are to be played vpon all inftruments are infinite; euen fo, the feurerall guards for defence and offence are not to be numbred; for, betweene the true skill in weapons, and the falfe, are anhundred of each at the leaft, and the contrarieft and the molt vilfemely, euery man hath by nature, burt the beft and furefle way is to be learined by Art of then that are skilfull; wherfore fee cuery mans iudgement. For as thou mayeft heare at one Sermon that which thou fhalt neuer heare againe, euen fo thou maieft learne of one teacher, that thou canf not learne of another : for cueric one that practifeth naturall play without direction of one that is skilfull, fuch a one in his practife, will haue one foolifh tricke or other : which when they hane by common practife long ved, will hardly be withdrawne from it: as for example, fome will be fetting their foote vpon their weapons, as if it were to ftrecch him when hee was
righo

The Schoole of Defence.
right before, but they do it of a foolifh cuftome that they learne of themfelues : likewife, fome will puffe and blow like a broken winded horec when they are at play, and fome will daunce and keepea trampling with their feere, and fome will flourifh and wauce with their weapons, fome will whifthe, and fome will beblabbring of fititle in their mouthes, and purting out their tongues, and fome againe will rume about as though they could fand on no ground, and it is as hard to wreft or driue them from fich voleemely cuftomes, as it is to driuc a dogge from a peece of bread.
Yet many doenot fee it in themflues, but vito the skilfull, which beholde them, it will feeme very vafeemely, and by nature, eueric one hathe he woorft way; as for example, there are but two wayes for the bowing of the head, cither to the right hand, or to the left, and by nature, cuery one doth bow him towards the leff fide, rather then to the right fide; and there is very great oddes betwixt the riglot and the wrong in true defance, as I have defrribed in my rea. fons more at large, both in the place of Sword and Dagger, andRapier and Dagger, for it is greatadmantage to leane thy head towards the right houlder alitele; and at the begiming of your practife it is vesy eafie to frame your felfe to my tahion, with flanding both with feete and bodie, for the vfe of the foore commeth not by nature, butby practife. Againe, many yoong men will be growne with flouth: julneffe, and be fo lazic, that they muft be haled (as it were) with cartropes to any good exercife,accoulsuing him their greateft encony which giueth them the befl counfell, but toall folly they arc prone andape

K 3
of theme'iues, but perfivade them to any goodneffe, and you fhall fee them hang arfe-ward like dogge in 2 flring.
Moft youth, for example, are willing to goe to Schoole at the firtt, but within a weeke or leffe, away muft the booke be laid, for feare left much learning make them madde, as Fefus faid to Paul, for they will waxe dull and weary with a little paines taking.

And next, they muft to the Fence Schoole, but there $I$ am perfwaded they neede not learne offence, and 1 thinke alitele deferse is enough for them; for many will be wearic of woll doing quickely, faying as the Porters of $\mathrm{Br} f$ fow, a new Maifter, a new, and hang vp the old; euen fo, from the Fence fchoole they muit goc to the Dauncing fchoole, thinking that to be the onely exercile in the world, but witha little pradife they waxe weary of dancing likewife : then they fay, Oh that heere were one to teach Muficke! that exercife they fhould neuer be wearie of, but within a little while that will be too tedious a matter to comprehend : fo you may perceiue yong men (by their wills) will take paines at nothing, I meane, not one in twentie, but what they are forced vnto.
Now I doe not put downe thofe vanities, heere before in this Chapter expreffed, thereby that thou fhoulden waxe the worle, by che reading of it, but I doe wifh thee to marke others, and likewife examine thy felfe, that if thou fee in others, or find in thy felfe fuch fooliflumeffe, refraine while thoul art yong.
Although nany there be that do vfe foolith ericks;' and perceiue them not in themflues to be vnfeemely, bur fuppofe theybecome thom well, as he that wauereth his weapon,or runnech abour, wearieth him fclfe: ling, for a litlle fhrub, buth, briar, fone, or moule. hill, may foone oucrthrow him which doth not tranerfe his ground leafurely and orderly; for he which hath true defence munt bee fteadic in his guard with his foote and hand in their right.place, whereas hee: which wanereth his weapon is arno corraine guard for bis defence; therefore, to keep fteadie your weapons in their right place, is the beft way: for, one blow, or one thruft, orderly done, is better then an hundred withour skill or out of order; for cunning in weapons may be compared to trickes ar Carcies, for :fone thew a tricke at Cardes, it will feeme ftrange to him that neucr faw it before; but to him that can doe it, it s nolling troublefome : euen fo, as that tricke at Cardes is nothing when the fecret is knowne, but very cafie to be donc: cuen fo, the bett way ac weapons, is as eafic to bee followed (being knowne) as the worft.
Farre deccived are thofe which imagine they can. not attaine vnte the perfect skill of Defence with Rapier and Dageer, without fuch antique fathions of learning, which many of late yeares hauc deufed, fome wreathing their bodics like vnoo a coakes, and fome, as though they were going to daunce the Antique, which maketh many that have no experience at this weapon thinke it vipolfible cuer to frame their bodies, as shey fee thefe doe, which I feake of:" but now thefe fantalticall fellowes will periwade a man, thater is not poffible to play wellat Rapier and Dagger, excepra man can frame his body as they do;but I lay, the beft and fureft way is the eafieft to be atayned vito; fur a boy offiftecne ycares of age, ${ }^{\text {maxy }}$ (by

The Schoole of Defence.
fmall pratife) defend himfelfe againf any man, with his rapier \& dagger ; for a thruß with a rapier is more fearefull then with a fword, and a man may fee the thruft beterer of a fword then with a rapier, becaule there is oddes in the breadth and bigneffe each of the other. Againe, a man fhall thruft further with a rapier then with a fword, for the hilt of a fword will Ahorten your reach, by realon of the clofeneffe of the hilt, though they be both of one length.

Yet many are of this opinion, and will fay, it is better to fight with a Sword and Dagger, then with Rapier and Dagger, the reafon is (fay they) with my Sword I may both frike and thruft.

But I Ray,and by good experience I fpeake it, that hee which friketh in fight, giueth lis enemie a great aduantage; befides, a Sword may cither bow or breake, and foby that meanes bee that friketh may fall into his enemies mercy. Befides that, a boy of fifteenc yeares of age niay fafely defend the ftrongert mans blow that is, according to my direation following in the firt Pidure;for a weake man, or a boy, may defend more with both his hands, then a frong man can charge hind with one; for many can not forbeare ftriking, being moued thereunto by anger, except they haue beene grounded in the difaduantage of is by much practile; hee that doth defend a blow double, and make a quicke anfwere with a thruff, by turning of his knockes inward, may hit any manthat friketh, and yet defend himfelfe withour loffe of time.

For the defence of a blow double, is fure, and ye you may anfwer your enenie fo foone, and with af. much danger to him as if you did defend it fingle,for

The Scboole of Defence.
51
it may beall done with one motion, both the defence and offence.

Furthermore, I would counfell all Clothiers or Chapmen, which carric many tines more money then they are woorth; for their defence againf falfe knaues, to carry a Staffe in their iournies, whether it be on horfe backe or on foote; for a good weadon doth not onely ferue to kecpe the peace, butalfo a mans purfe from a thicfe; and likewife to be experien.. ced in the skill thereof, if they flould be drituen to enceunter vpon a fodaine at the like weapon. Buta faffe may eafily encounter againft a Sword and dag. ger, although but fmall experience be in the Staffe. man; buta litulo skill is a great lielp at a time of nced, which if thou haft not obrained in thy youth, then ba not afhamed to lcarne when thou art olde; for as in a fchoole of learning, there are fome in Grammer, and fome in the Crofferow; fo the greateft Iudge in the land was in the Croffe-row firf:cuen fo into a fchole of Defence there commeth, as woll badde players, a:s good, and hee which is the good player ougle not, norit is not a thing vfinall to mocke or skoffc at him which is the badde player : and what of all this? Nothing, but to fhew, that it is better tolearnelate then neuer, I meancefpecially any good exercife or qua litic, which is, or may be profitable for a Commonwcalth, healthy to the bodic, and commendable to to the world, for we are not borne altogether for our felues, but our Parents, Friends, and Counrry haue intereft in ourbirth.
Now alchough fome will talke of this and thar, and fay, that they haue fought with foure or fixe men at once, yec $I$ can conceiue no rcalon, how anie man $L$
flould

## The Schoole of Defonce.

fhould defend two men, efpecially if they bee both willing to fpoile, or kill; for when thine eie is direaly upon ane of them; the other, in the meane while, may. kill thee, if he be difpofed; for the motion of the eie is flower then the motion of the hand; for 2 man cannot caft his cie about fo quicke, but that he which is behinde thee, or on the one fide of thee, may kill thee, ifthey be both willing (as I have faid before :) But indeede if one skilfull man haue two or three vpon him, and be in a narrow place, that they can not get about him, then may hee defend himfelfe a long time without hurt.
A left hand skilfull hath oddes againf a right handed mav, one reafon is, that a left handed man is continually vfed to a right hand, but a right hand doth feldome meete with a left handed man; an other reafon is, a right handed man, when hedoth open his xight fide of his head, by offering play, alchough hee beare his Dagger to the right eare, yet it doth not defend that fide, fo fure, nor fo ftreng as it doth the left fide. But indeede, fo long as the right handed man lieth in his guard of defence vpou his Backe-fword, for the Barke-fword is the chiefelt poynt of defence againfa left handed man; therefore when you encounter againft a left handed man, you muft be carefull and heedie, if you do offer play, to recouer your guard againe prefencly, and be in the defence of your Backe-fword guard : But of this I will fpeake more at large hecreafter.

Сиap. VII.
That Feare and Fury are both cnemies to
true valour.


Hauc taken vpon me a very hard queflion to decide : for I can not well fet out the office of the one, but with dilgrace of the other; the one is fo cleane conurarie so the other: Firf, that Feare is ann enemy vnto valour, I neede not to makeany long difcourfe, for cucry one will lay, that the fearefull man will neuer attenpt any thing worthy the name of V alour, but alwayes beare a loade of iniuries vpon his broade thoulders, excufing all the wrongs which are done him, laying, that they were done with no intent of wrong, and fo himelelf firt crauing pardon of thofe which offend him, but yet bearing an iniuric in his minde, vntill he can reuenge ft, by vertue of an office, or one way or another; alfo, he is a raifer of mutinies, and loueth to fee other together by the eares, and yct keep himfelfe out of danger, but fome I hane known, which haue bintimerfome and cowardly, fhew great valour, but indeede it was when there was no remedie but that they muft needes fight. Againe, I hane knowne many fimple cowardly men, whobeing well experienced with skill, and being pradized thercin, doe waxe bolde and valorous; for when(by often crial) they fee that they can faue and defend themfelues, what neede haue they to feare, for there is a certainty of defence, and hee which hath it, may bee as fure without making any doubt or queftion, as it is for A rithmetitian to cafl vp feuerall fummes iuft to a panny : cuen fo certaine may a skilfull man be in his de.

L 2 fence:
fence: and it is as eafic to make a fearefull or cowardly man, perfect in knowledge, and fo by knowledge tobring him to be valorous; yea more eafie it is then to make a haftie man, of valour and fomacke, to forbeare his former refolution; for as no perfwafions will make a druukard forfake his drunkenneffe, bue onely pouertie or death : cuen fo there is almon no meanes to perfwade the furious and haftie man from this fodaine quarrelling and ftabbing, but onely many dangerous wounds, imprifonment, or death: Yes if fuch a one doe runne chrough many brawics, and fo continue, vntill his owne rod hath beaten him, by croffes and troutles: if all thefe can not make him liue ciuill, and in fober fathion, as he ought to dor, yet olde age will bring experience, and wili make him as tane as a heepe; for when thee is olde, then hee will fay, that a man inould not aduenture further then skill being tempered with difcretion, doth allow :for obleruc I pray you, if you chance to fee two skilfull men play or fight; and if thefe two fall into choller and furie, fo that like two wilde Bulles they goe to it pell mell, then it is chance noddy to hitte or miffe; for where fury hath the vpper hand it is not worth the fight to the beholders, for they can thew no true Art, except they obferue diftance, for difance being broken, they cut or hurt one another which is a great difgrace vnto true Art, and a difcouragement to many which would learne skill, but that they fee by fuch haftie fooles, that skill auailech not, and indeede it doth little auaile fuch as camot bridle their haftic affections ; bue yet many will fay it is true, yet they cannot beware of the diuell, vncill they are plagucd with his davme. For after a skilfuil man hath
recciued

The Schoole of Dcfence.
55
receivedhurt he prefently condemneth his owne folly, for receining that which he might haue auolded ifhis mind had been on his bufineffe; now as I would haue no man curn coward but to anfiver a good quatrell, fo likewife I would moft earnefly wifh all men to forbear and not maintain fuch light and idele braules which either foring fromlcwd woonen, ns that are pot frayes, for drunkenneffe is the caufe of the moft quarrells that be, yet fill I doc allow and commend any man to anfwer his enemy yoon a good quarrell, and to fand again! him, if he doc affault thec:for that wil mane others to feare to doe thee wrong or thy friend wrong, thinking that thou wilt rite it. Now he which is valorous by nature, and hath no skill, and yet hath a good flrength, courage, and fomacke, many times dothaduenture raflily without feare or wit, not numeh volike a foolith gamefter which vrgethand neuer counceth vpon his fellowes game, but many times is were better hold then vie, for as fom loof their mony by their rafh vying at the one, fo many loofe their liues by a foolinh bold hardineffe at the other:formany in their very fift attempt, or as it werctheir entring into hope to get the praife of the world to bee accounted valorous loofe their liues, which is for wat of mixing diferetion with fomacke.
Many examples to this offect might bee fhowne which hapued in the wars of Erance, Flasders and Ireland, for in all thefe places as good menfor valor as euer the Sun did fhine vpon, loft their lives vpon the very firfe atempt, onely by rafhneffe, and fo their honor is writen in a Chronicle of duft, for it euen dyed with them.

I hold it a greater credit to retreat for thine owne Gafery being in danger, rather then ftill to charge one $\mathrm{L}_{3}$
and fo be llaine or fore wounded, yer miftake me not, for 1 doe not here commend running away neither, but vfe a meane and policy in retreating,for running away is a cowards defence. A good man may giue backe for bis aduantage, and no difgrace at all, if men of iudgement doe fee it, and doe iudge with difcretion. For the valiantef Captaine that ener did breath, for his aduantage would retreat without any difho. nor at all, therefore he which will be accounted valo. rous, and runne through many dangers and bryars of mifchiefe, quarrells and troubles of this world, he muft many cimes be patient vpona great wrong profered him, but afterwards with diferetion examin thy force and thy skill together, how thou maift without hazard of thy life reuenge the wrong offered, and that thou maiff fofight as thou main fighe againe, without loofing thy life vpon the firf aflaule asmany doe. but he is 2 foole which will aduenture all his goods in one (hip, efpecially ifit be in a dangerous voyage, or all his mony at one throw at dice although hee know the rume of the dice neucr fo well, for he that doth fo may hap to loofe all. For there are many dangers at fea and many chances at dice, but a good quarrell doth halfe defend himfelfe, and alfo a good quarrell many times maketh a coward fight : againe, it is a grear difcredit to bee counted a run away, the voskilfull muft doe for his owne defence at fomtimes and yet flomacke enough.
Tnerefore whether it be in fingle combat or other wife,vere thy weapon with diferetion, without choller or haftineffe, looking vnto thy buffineffe which thou haft in hand, foberly $\&$ mild 1 y , and let wifedom guide the bridle,for fo maif thou go through many a quar-
rell and run through many skismifhes often without hurt, although not withour danger.

There is no exercife learned but by often practife, for fo it is made perfect : valor, and Atomacke commeth by nature, but skill neucr commeth by nature, and he which is grounded in skill by arte and practile will not feare the proud brags of any man. But now if fuch a one fight he vecth his skill and dependeth chicfly vponit, but the hafty and furious man thinkecth tfat he is neucr neere enough, and to many of them neuce fight but once, for they are flainc in their owne haftineffe, the very firt time of aducturing; for hafte oftentimes makech waft.
I doe remember a prety ieft of King Henry the eighs as I haue heard it, that when he went to Bulloigne hice fent out his Preffe-mafters, commaunding them to bring all the luftief hackers in the comntry, and they brought and prefented him with many that in fight had receiued many wounds, the skarres whereof remained, and the King beholding them faw that fome of them had beene cur in the face in one place, and fome in another, and fome on the hicad, and fome had lof fome of their fingers;then faid the King vito the Preffe-mafters, like thele men well; bue yet goe fetch me them which did cut thofe fellowes, whereby be meant that thofe which had the moft hures were not the beft men.

Chab

Chap. VIII.
How the vfe of we capons came, alfo the number of weapons ved from time to time, witb other good inftructions.

(A N was firf created naked, withour any weapons naturally, fauing onely hands and feete, which are able to make but a weake refiftance againft any great violence, onely this the hands to thrult away that which may annoy vs, and the fecte to run from that which may hurt vs. Now al other creatures except manare naturally armed with fuch weapons as doth of tentimes kill and deftroy any other beaft which doth offend thens.

As for example, God in his creation furnifhed the Lyon, the Beare, the Dog, and the Wolfe, and other fuchlike beafts, whith long and fharpe teeth and clawes, and they are with them able to teare in peeces and deuour any man or beaf, which they oppofe themfelues againft, now otherbeafts there are whofe Arength confifteth in other parts, and they doe auenge themfelues in other manner; as the Vnicorne and the Bull, with their hornes, and the force of their heads, fo that there is no other beaft or creature is 2ble to abide the violence and force thereof.

Alfonote the force of fowls of the ayre as the fawcon, and the Eagle, what a dangerous weapon is the beake of them vuro fuch fowles or beatts as they oppore themfelues againft.
Likewife for venemous beatts, as the Serpent, the Viper, the Scorpion, and fuch like, are fo armed with poifoned and venemous Atings, which not oncly terrifieth but hurtethand deftroicth thofe men or beaft which

## The Schoole of Degertse.

commeth neare them.
Likewife Godin his creation made all creatures to feuerall purpofes, but moft of all for the vfe of man, for fome he made to feed vs, fome to cloath vs, fome to fport vs, and fome to carry vs, and fome to deftroy vs.

Loe thus much by the way of argument, as a preamble to that which I intend to fpeak of concerning weapons as followeth.

In old time amongit men the frongeft cary away the vidory, I meane at that cinse when there was little or no other weapon vfed, bur only rooth 8 naile, hands and feet : now in thofe dayes many men did thinke that they made a good hand when chey faued themfelues by fight, or any other meanes, from thofe which were to ftrong for them, and fo the world continued a long time, the Atrongeft fill carryiug awiay the victory.

For what weapons bad they I pray you in the time of Samp/fon, did not hee for want of other weapons with a law bone kill and deftroy a thoufand Philiftims in a fmall time without any hurtto himfelfe?

Now at this time if there had been any weapons of more danger put the cale this. Although Samp fon was charged vpan fuch a fuddaine wherby ho had no leifure to arme himfelfe, yet you muft viderfand and know, that his enemies came purpofely to be reuenged vpon him, becaufe he had burned vp their corne: wherefore if there had been weapons they wold halue been fo armed without all doubr or queftion, and fo prouided for him, that either they would haue woun. ded orkilled him, before he fhould haue made firch hauocke or flaughter among th them.

Againe,

Againe, what weapons had they when Saimgar flue fix hundred Philiftimes with an oxe goade, as in the third of Iudges there you may read it in the laft verfe.

But after this as the number of people begun to multiply, and the malice, rage, and fury of manbegan to increale, fift they began to reuenge themefelues with clubs, flaues, flings, and darts. And afterward they fudied and inuented other weapons and armor for wars, as at the firlt beginning of wars they made Iron chariors, and then they armed. Elephants, and horles, afterwards they found out the forging of fwords, fpeares, Bills, Halberts, Iauclins and Partizans, Croffe-bowes and long bowes, and fuch like; and eucry kind of weapon for more aduantage and danger one then another, fill changing onely to make triall of the ben, for cheir aduantage, and fuch they keepe in vfe that were of greater force not only to terrific, but to hurt and deftroy their enemies.: But of late yeers che y hane changed all weapous for muskets, Harquebuth, and Croffe-bowes', Calicuers, Pikes, Swords, and Rapiers, and fuch like manly wca. pons of graat danger, efpecially vinto the ignorant and vnskilfull.
Now thereforeas we are prouided of fundry kind of dangerous weapons, I could withenery man to foend a little time in practifing to learne skilland cuaning ae fuch weapons, as widh skith ase moff fafe to defend, and yet moft dargerous and hautfill to thy enemy, confidering this that the skilfull and cunning man fighteth withour feare;for not only thofe which vie the making of armes and weapons are well accepted of, whercin manyare accounted famous, 8 st therby makinga good liuing for their continuall main-
tenance,

## The Schoole of Defense.

61 nance, but yet more accepted are they which can ve weapons well both for defence and offence:for many thereby have gotten fucli credit through out all the world, infomuch that Kings and Princes doe adorne them which are excellent thercin with the names of Knighes, and fome with graater ritles of honor:wherfore it is a great thame for any carrying the flape or perfonage of a man, but that he fhould be fo cunuing and to furnifhed with skill and with continuall praCtife, fo to veite as not only to defend thy felfe, but alfo to Ipeake and to difcourfe of weapons and armes in what company foeuer thou come into fiting fich 2 matcer.
The Romans foone after the inuention of fwords generally they grew fo expert and cunning, that they were able and did fet foorth whole armies of fwordplayers, fuch as are now called Fencers.

It is a wofull fight vnto the skilfull to lee fo many yong gentemen, which being once blindfolded with ignorance and for want of skill many times lofe their liues in fight, withour reafon or indgement, and yet fome fuch there are which will aduenture; oncly they doe it ypoun an afpiring mind, thinking thereby to get the praife of the world, which is to be accounted valorous, and tall men at armes, for to beaccounted wife and valiant is cuery mans defire.
Wherefore as amongft the wife and ancient writers that euer wrote, wee find the wife so pronide in fummer for winter, in time of peace for wars; for sher is nothing fo fure but as that after peace there will come wars, there is no man liuing that although he carry himfelfe neuer fo vprightly yee at one time or otherhe may bee fo wronged that he munn needes M 2
fight:

## 62 <br> The Schoole of Defence.

Aght : therefore he that is wife will be armed before lnand, not onely with weapons, but skill ; thereby to prevent a mifchiefe if occafion feruc,as you fhal hear more at large in the next Chapter.

## Chap. IX.

Sheweth what an excellent thing skill is, with per. fivafon to all men to forbeare the maintaining of idle quarrels.

等
O hew you what skill is it will be a hard queftion to decide, and a matter too deepe for me to handle, for we fee daily many principall and cunning men euen at their wits end in ftudying and deuifing skill and cunning in all arts and fcieuce, and yee to the end of their liues they find themfelues ignorant in many things, and are fill to learne, yea euen in that which they haue alwayes bin trained vp vnto.

Wherefore I think the ground of art and cunning is not to be found out, no although a man doe trauell more larger ground then the whole earth, or if hes Thould fye aboue she clouds, or diue deeper then the fea, all which is vnponfible: wherefore fecing it is fo large that I cannot compas it, fo high I cannot reach it, and fo deepe a hidden fecret, that I cannot found the bottom of it; for I cannot traunile fo far, climbe fo high, nor wade fo deepe, yet fo farre hauc I trauelled and fo high haue I climbed, and fo deepe haue I waded, that I fee art $\&$ skill fo preuaile with thofe which bendeth their minds ther eunto, they become morefamous the any other ordinary men are, for skill is fuch alx excelleat thing, that it abateth the choller and
courage

## The Schoole of Defence.

63
courage of the hafty and furious man, fo that hee be tempered with difcretion! cuen as yron being tempered with fleele, maketh a blade; whereas ifit be all hecle, it will be too brittle and foonebroken; or all yron, then it will be too blunt : enen fo, he which is furious and hafty will be foone killed. Againe, skill, vfe and exercile therein doth ouercome many ill humours, which without it, are neuer to beleft, as you thallheare.

For, skill maketh shofe hardy at their weapons, which are fo timerfome, as they will wincke at cueric blow; yea, and if he were as fearefull and as cowardly as a Hare by nature, yet fuch a one (by skill) becommeth, bold, hardy, and valorous; allo (by vfe and practife) it maketh a man to vfe both his hands alike: wherefore I would haue no man that carrieth the perfonage or thape of a man, buthee thould learne as much skill in his weapons as poffiblehecean; and likewife learne as many gards at cach weapon as chou mayeft, that thercby thou mayct be the betterable to anfwer any man vpon a good quarrell, if his skill and cunning wereneuer fogood, but he which hath skill but at one weapon, and is acquained bur with one guard, and hath but one kinde of blow, or bue one kinde of thruft; I doe not fee how fuch a man Thould bee able to defend himfelfe from one that is skilfull and cunning in many other guards, and many blowes and thrults; for one guard, oneblow, or one thruft will quickely be wome threed-bare; it is fuppofed, that if a horle did know his owne frength, a man could notrule him ; cuen fo, for want of fuch manly knowledge, as enery one ought to be experienced in, doeneuer come to the knowledge of their firength,

M 3
nor

## 64 The Scboole of Defence.

nor dare not attempt any thing worth the commendations ef manhoode, onely for want of experience and practife; for little doth any man know what good fortune is allotted out for him, and fure the greateft credite and honour that euer came to any man, was through skill in weapons: fuch an exceilent armour is Skill, that it maketh a man fight without feare: and he which hath it, will fight with fuch warineffe, that he will hurt, and not be hurt himfelfe, except it bee by great oddes of weapons, or more then one weapon at once.

Hee which is a man of his hands will haue many tales brought him, butbefore thon give any credite vnto a Tale-bearer, confider well the condition of the meffenger, before thou put any confidence in his fpeeches, whether he bea drunkard, a coward, or a foole; for any of thefe three forts of men, there is -no credite nor truft to be given vato their rpeech. Againe, a Gentleman, or a man of any good fathion, ought not to carry tales : but if fuch a one doe heare his friend wronged behinde his backe, he ought with difcietion to anfwer him, in his friends behalle, with reafonable words, and not to report vnto his friend, the worft that he heareth an idle fellow fpeake, except it be a matter which concerneth his life, then it isnot amiffe to warne thy friend, to the end he may be prouided againft fuch a mifchicfe; but the carrying ofeuery idle tale berwixt man and man, doth much hurt, and fettech whole hourholds togecher by the eares. Againe, he which is a carrier of tales, can not truely defiuer a mans feeech, without adding or diminifhing: and either of thefe two doe alter the whole property of the fpeech which was firf deliuered, and it

## 7 he Schoole of Defence.

65
ro falleth our many times, that the Tale-bearer brin. geth himfelfe into many quarrells, and to be enuied on both fides: therefore, he which can lecare, and fee, and fay little, will finde moft quierneffe, for littic faid is foone anfwered : but the that talketh much, can neuer place all his words well, nor pleafe enery mans humour : and firely Talc-bcarers are the breceders of great mifchicfe.
For many times vpon others words forne do beare malice one to another, without caule of defert, and yer occafion is taken, and perlappes none giucn neither ; the one party dothnot know of the malice the other beareth him of a long time, and this is not well, for if thonbe grieucd, reucaie thy minde, and make a bolt or a thate of it quickely, either to end it with weapons or with words or by the perfiwations of friends, as occafion thall fertue, when it cometh in queftion, and dhen afterwards be fricinds, but ar no hand, let no cmuious hatred remsine in thy heart againf anic peffon, of what condition focucr; but rather go vinto him which fake ill words aguinft thee, and aske him incurtenameancs, bur not in outrage andanger, vontill thoulteare his tale; for the Tale bearer it may bejis in the fault, in relling a tale to make a quarrell, when there is none meant.
Meddle not with great men which are aboue thy callung, for thoughthey wrong thee, and thatehous baft a good quarell, yet thou canfl get little by maintaining fuch a quarrell; for might(ofentimes) ouercommeth righr, and the weikeft goeth commonly to the walles : then is it better to beare the burthen of the mighty, and indure their malice with paricnes. and let fucl quarrells slippe, rather then ftirre furth;

The Schoole of Defence.
in them, left itbe thy ouerthrow: and, he carrieth the molt honourable minde, which in talking of his enemie, can fobridle his affections, 25 to vfe no railing, nor vndecent fpeeches behind his enemies backe, for he that doth fo, difhonefteth himfelfe: befides, thofe which heare him, will iudge that hee had rather fight with his tongue then with his fword.
Againe, a man of great power and authoritic ought not to offer wrong vnto any man of meaner fort: for it hath beene often feene, that a worme being troden vpon, will turne againe; and many poore men will rather loofe their liues, if fo twere they durlt aduenture to challenge the rich for feare of the Lawe, I do meane when they are oppreffed, wronged, and dif graced by the rich and mighty men; for the Lawe is a quirke to reftraine or to checke poore mens wills, for it doth hamper and temper, and bring them into fubicetion: and as the olde Prouerbe goeth, The rich men haue the Lawe in their owne hands.

Euen as the ignorant and viskilfull do many times feare to difpleafe a fwaggerer or a common quarreller; euen fo poore men are afraide to offend the rich.

Now concerning a rich man, I remember a prettie example or a cale, and as I heard is, you fhall heare it, There was a Gentleman which buile a gallant faire houfe, whom I will leave nameleffe, but he had many ploughs and carriages for timber, lime, and fones; fome feruing his prefent need, for loue, fome for mony, and fone for feare (as you thall heare) for at night (whop the carriage wảs ended) the Geneleman called them one after an other, and vnto che firt hee faid; What haue you earned? Sir (faid he)I canc for loue, and not for money. I thanke you (faid the Gentle-

## The Scioole of Defence.

man.) So then he asked another, Faying, firta, what came you for? Sir(faid he) I am bur a poore man, and I came for mony. And fo the Gentlenan payed him his wages : Then he called an other, and asked him wherefore he came, or what he had deferued? $\operatorname{Sir}$ (faid he) I came notro you for loue, nor formoney, but onely for feare of your difpleafure. Said the Gentle. man, why are thou a fraid of me which never did thee hurt in allmylife ? Yea, but fir (faid he) Ihaue feene many poore men enuyed, wronged, and imprifoned many times for ill will by the rich, when they have but little deferued it; thereby thewing, that fome rich men will beare fuch malice vnto a poore man, if hee thall deny him fuch carringe, or if hee doe not helpe hite in the harueft, or if hee fhall denie him the felling of a horfe, ground, or cattell, thar the Gentleman hath a minde vito; for many of them thinke that a poor man foold denie them nothing, but ifthey doe, a grudging hatred continucth vntill they haue renenged it; but if in a long time they camotfinde a hole in his coare, whereby to reuenge their malice: yet when a preffe commeth, then they put him forth for a Souldier, although there be twentic others in the fame Parifh, which would willingly ferue, and likewife that might be farre better fared, and a great deale more fitte, for an vnwilling feruant feldome doth his mailter good feruice.

## The Schoole of Defence.

Chap. X.

## The frickes of $a$ Coward.



HE firt reafon which I will fet downe, whereby you may know a coward, is, by the lading of himfelfe with weapons; for I haue knowne a very fearefull man to fee to, and yet a coward, carry a Welch hooke vpon his backe, a clofe hilted Sword and Dagger, yer(miftake menot) for I doe not call euery man that is fo weaponed, a coward, but fand ftill alitile, and you fhall know who I meane.

When a man (ypen a good quarrell) doth challenge a coward into the field, it may be it commeth oo this point; Where flall we meere faith the one ? In fich a place or fuch a place faith the other; but in the end, they make a fecret conclufion, and choice of a place is agreed vpon; but then, if the coward goe inso the field at all, hee will be fure to goe where hee will not meere with his enemy, but to one of the a-fore-named places, and there hee will ftay a while, and if any company come by, hee will eell them, that he flayeth to fightwith fucch a man, becaule they thall notenim for a tall liman of his hands : and thell at his comming backe agoine, amongef his companions, he will bragge and boaft that he hath beene in the field, to mecte with fuch a man, and he came not; when the other all the while was at the place where they concluded to have met.
Againe, fome cowards will fo dare and bragge out a man in company, with fuch fwaggering words, whereby the hearers fhould thinke there were not a better man to be found: and ifit be in a Faire or Mar-

The Schoole of Defence.
69
ket, then he will draw his weapons, becaufe he knoweth that he fhall be foone parted, for the people will fay, that fuch 2 one and fuch 2 one made a great fray to day, but I account this but por-valour, or a Co wards fray to fight in the freete, for a man can giue no due commendations of manhood vnto fuch fighters, for there is no valour in it.
Againe, I hauc knowne a Coward cunningly challengea very fufficient man, and they haue met in the field, but at their meeting, the Coward will fay chus vnto him, Now I fee thou art a man, and I will take thy part againft all men, but I will neuer drawe my Sword againft thee, that which I did was but to trie thec.
Alfo a cunning Coward, when hee hath wronged or miffeved a man, the party grieucd doth challenge the feld of him, then hee will beare it out with great. bragges and high lookes, enough to feare any man, that will be feared with words, hewing himfelfe ourwardly as though hee would fight indeede; for the Coward will fay vnto the challenger, Thou wilt not mecte mee, ifI hould appoint thee a place, for thou dareft not anfwer me: for be it knowne vito thee, if I vnfheathe my Sword, I will not draw him in vaine; but now if he lee thefe bragges can not difmay nor affwage the furie of the other, but thathee will needes fight, then hee aflayeth other wayes, ifit be one of his acquaintance, hee will fay, The world fhall not fpeake ofit, that wee two thould fall out : or, ifit be to an inferiour, then he will ftand vpon his gentility, faying that he will not doc him that credite, for thou arta bafe fellow, a fellow of nofathion, to compare With me. 1 haue knowne in a frange place, that a fcur-

## The Schoole of Defence.

uy bafe fellow will ftand fo much vpon his gentilitie, and thinke to make the world belecue he is a great man in his owne Countrey. Alfo, in a Tauerne or fuch like place, if there be company ready to holde him, then he will draw his Dagger vpon very fmal occafion, thewing himelfe refolute, as though hee would fight with the diuell; and then the company (with alitile perfwafion)brings them friends, which difcommend not, but I difcommend the falling out about a pipe of Tobacco, or a cuppe of Wine or Beere. But of this I haue fpoken fomething before, and (hall have occafion to fpeake more ar large of it heereafer; But firf, to end this I have in hand, many 2 Coward may fay, when he bain liued folong in the world vntill the world is weary of his company, I may be the belt man in the world, for I was neuer yet tried, nor neuer drew my Sword in earuelt in all my life hitherto: againe, it is good flecping in 2 whole skinne.
And a wife or a valorous man may cuen fay fo as well as a Coward : for I fay a man may very well anSwer a good quarrell, if occalion bo offered, yer fleep in a whole skinne; why fhall wee feare to goe to our beddes, becaufe fome dic in their beddes; fome die at Sea, and therefore fhall we feare to croffe the Sea; fome fall by chance, thal we neuer therefore rife for fearc offalling ? And what is all this ? Nothing, but to thew, that there is leffe danger in fighting a good quarrell with skill and difcretion, vpon colde bloud: but of this I haue fooken fufficiently already, if words would ferue. But if I thould write a whole Volume of onematter, yer it would ferue to fmall purpofo to fome; and fo where we left there we will beginne,
for what I have faid before, it is butss it were a deaw, but this laft thower fhall wet them to the skinne; a Coward will haue a Sword or a Rapier, for length (in a maner) like, a halfe Pike: but fince the vfe of fhort Swords came, you cannot kuow them by that marke, as youmight before, for many of them are got into the faflion, and it is the fiteff weapon that ever cane for their purpofe ; for fhort fwords are worne both of one and other, more for the fathion then for any other purpofe : butbecaufe men of good woorth doc weare them, therefore I will not call it the fooles fathion, but let cuerie man alone with his humour. Againe, 2 Coward will haue as good and as gallant a weapon as may bee gotten for money; but 1 doe not commend the man by the largeneffenor goodneffe of his weapons, neyther bee that hath many hurts and fcarres about his bodic. There is no due commendations to bec giuten of a Iudge, by his skarlet Gowne; neyther canaman commend the skilfulnes of the Marriner by his weating of a great whinte: golde is not certainely knowne to be golde, before it is tried, cucry thing is not as it fecuneth to bee for many a man carricti the thape and perfonage of a man: bur when they come to the toucti like golde to be tried, prooue bur fhadowes, as that which is like golde many times doth proone wore then Copper: euen fo, there is no certainc trule report carbe given of a man rouching manhoode epon the firft fight, without fome criall. You flatll feldone fec a Coward vfe his weapon, exceptitbe vpon a drunken humeur, or elfe, when he is driuen to it by extremity, and that he feeth no remedy, but that hee muft needes fight, but he wil many times be drawing in fome Alc-houfe

7he raboole of Defence.
or Taucrne, and there hee will be fencing with him; and fhewing his trickes, thinking to make the company belecue, that hee is an excellent fellow of his hands : and there many will be hewing of bed-poltes, or table-boords, or many fuch like trickes he will vfe : then forme Cowards will (by calting abroad of libels) and by night-walking, docmany mifchicuous trickes, onely to reuenge a mallice which they beare in mind, becaufe they can notreuenge it manfully, and yeta Coward will grieue and fret if iufly hee heare any other to be commended of any man for his manhoode and valour, for hee would have no man better thea himfelfe. And if fuch a one beare office in Cittie or Towne, hee will at no hand abide to heare, that a mafter of Defence fhould inhabite in the place where he gouerneth.

Alfo if any other commend a man that is a man indeed, a coward will difcommend him faying, he is no body; or he is not the man you take him for; with fuchlike difabling fpeeches, for if a coward cannot difgrace a man with deeds to his face, then he will depriue him with words behind his backe.
Alfo a coward delighteth to breed quarrells betwixt man and man, and to fet fuch as are named to bee men of their bands, together by the eares by falfereports, and by carrying of tales, and by making of molehillsmountaines, of halfe a word a long tale, to the hurt of others, and no good to themfelues : and what is the cbiefe caufe of all cowardly mindes bue oncly ignorance, and want of skill: but to conclude, neuer truft a coward in his fury, nor fuffer him not to comen eerer then the point of thy rapier, and thore let him tell his tale, butlet him haue no aduantage thy profeffed enemy.
That he is a coward which practifech the throwing of a dagger or the darting of a rapier, I will not fay, but he which putteth it in practife vpon a man, is a coward, forif he kill a man with fuch a tricke, in my mind it is pitty buthe thould die for it : and fo I will end with that example of a cowardly mutherer of one Cosbe, whofe murthering hands by a coufening deuice bereaued the Lord of Burke of his life, andas I heard it, thus it was: a quarrell grew between them, and the field was appointed, where they both mer, and being ready to charge each other, cosbe faid my Lord you hane fpurs which may anoy you: therefore if you pleale put them off, and euen as he was vnbuckling.ofhis fiurs, this cowardly and murthering minded cosbe ran him through with a mortall wound, whereof he died prefently.
Now to my owne knowledge, my Liord Burke was very skilfull in his weapons, and fufficient to haue anGivered any man becing equally weaponed, or vpon equall termes, therefore hard was his hap to meet with fich a cowardly murtherer, for his death is lamented of many, and Cosby was hanged for it.

Yet touching this matter, here followeth another example, as I heard it I will declare it: thus, there was a murtherer who efcaping the pietifully hands of the mercifull Indge, after he had killed two men, being zaken and apprehended for the third murther, and be. ing artaigned before the fame Iudge which had before fhewed pitty, began now to condemne this murtherer, and giue the fentence of death, and fo began to declare to this murtherer that had finall grace;
which
which could not beware being twice warned, but muft now kill the third man : therefore thou(faith the Iudge) well deferueft death, $8 x$ death thou fhalt haue: when the murtherer faw that he mutt die, he faid thus vntothe Iudge: My Lord you doe me wrong to condemne me for the killing of three men, for it was you that killed two of them : yea faid the ludge, how can that be?marry thus:ifyou had hanged me for the fir? I had not killed the other two : therefore it is pitty in my mind, that a man-flayer thould line to kill two men, butcobe hanged for the firft if it be not in his owne defence, or vpon a very good quarrell, and fol will ftrike faile for a while,

Chap. XI.
2 2uffionsand Anfwers.
Scholler.

qento
(in enHaue harkened all this while vnto your difcourfe, the which I like very well of, but now I am defirous if it pleafe you to be inftrueted with fome of your skill. Mafler. At what weapon are you defirous to learn. Scholler. Suchas you thinke fit for my defence. Mafler. Then I hold it neceflary for thee to learne the perfea vie of fixe kinds of weapons, not thatthou Thouldeft ftill bee armed with fo many weapons, bue with the skill of them, for that will notburthen thee nothing at all : for thou maift in trauell by chance meet at fundry times, with fundry men, which are armed with fundry kind of weapons, now if thou bee prouided before hand with skill at fuch a weapon, as by chance thou maif meet withall, knowing the dan-
ger thou wilt the better preuent the mifchicfe.
scboller. Whatbe the fixe weapons which you would hauc me to learne.
Mafter. The firftand two principall weapons are the rapier and dagger, and the fanfe, the other fowne are the back fword, the fingle Kapier, the long fivord and dagger, and the fhort fivord and dagger, but with the wo former weapons thon maitt encomater by skill with any man in the world, the rapier and daeger againft any weapon of the famelength, at fingle hand and with a faffe againft any two handed wcapon, as againtt the welch hooke, two hand fword, the Halberd, Partifan, and gloue, or any other weapon of the like aduantage : but prouided alwayes choumult be fure armed with skill at thofe two efpecially: and with all the reft if thou canit, for then maif thou bee the bolder to encounter with any man at any of the other, if thy enemy charge thee vpon the fuddaina with a contrary weapon, thou wilt prefently know what thy enemy can docwith his weapon, which if thon haft no skill in, it will feeme the more fearefull vnoothec.

For if Golias hadbeen experienced in the cumning of a fling, hee would not haue condemned Dauid fo raflily, nor made folighe accomnt of himashe did: but if thou hauc skill with fuch a weapon, as thou are to eneounter againft, it will be nothing troublefome vnto thec, for there is no way to bit, but chere is a way to defend, as thon that here more at large, but firf tell me what thou art, and thy bringing vp.
Scboller. I was a ycomans forne, anll always brought vpidle vader my father, but now my father is dead, sud that liede which he lefe mee for the mon part

The Schoole of Defence.
haue confumed and fpent, wherefore I pray you direct meny courfe, by fome of your good counfell, for 1 hauc little to rrult to, bur only nyy hands, therefore I am willing to lcarne any thing which may gain me a good report, and fomething bencficiall for my maintenance.

Mafer. Indeed meanes to liue and a good name withall, is more then gold, and becaufe thou thewent thy felfe willing to be inftrufted, thou thalt heare bricfly what I would doe if my felfe were in thy cafe, for if 1 hould enter into large difcourfes I might thercby well make thee weary with the hearing of it, but perhaps neucr the wiler, and fo thereby thou mighteft well give me occafion to accounc the time very ill fpent in writing of it. Neucrtheleffe I will reckon little of my labour, for I am in hope to doe thee good, for thou muft or fhouldeft know not onlyhow to vfe and goucrne thy weapon, but alfo thy felfe, in all companies, and in all places, where thou hale happen to cone ; for kinde and curteous behauiour winneth fauour and loie wherefoener thou goef, but much the beter if it be tempered with manhood and skill of weapons. Now fome will fay that skill in wea. pons is good moft chicfly for gentlemen, but I fay it fhould be in all men, for I haue known and icen many poore mens fonnes come to great honor and credit, and chiefly it was becaufe they had skill in weapons, wherefore in my mind it is the moftexcellent quality ofall both for high and low, rich and poore. But when thourart experienced at thy weapon, I would with thee to make choice of one of thofe three exercifes for thy cuntinuall expences and maintenance fo long as thou liueft, and not liue like a drone vpon

The Schoole of Defence.
77
other mens labours, for leaft in time if thon wert neuer fo good a man, yer cuery one would waxe weary of thy company.
Scholler. I pray you, what be the three Exercifes which you would counfe! me to take my choice of?
Mafer. Marry, thy felfebeing of teafonable good yeares, and hauing neither lands, nor but alittle liuing left thee, choofe whether thou wilt goe learne fome trade or occupation, or elfe goc into the wars, or be a feruing man; for when thou laft skill in thy weapon, thou munf have fome meanes to maintaine thine expences; for idle hands will make a hungric bellie, and a hungric bellie muft needes haue meate, and meate will not be bought in the market for honefie without money.
Scholler. Which of chefe Exercifes would you aduife me to follows
Maifer. I commend them all, but yet an occup:tion is a more certaine ftay vnto a man, both in his youth and in his age, then any of the other two are; and as thou art in yeares, fo oughte? thouto bee the more witty, if it be not fo, it thould be fo, and a man of reafon will the fooner be his crafff-manter. A man is netuer too olde to learne, efpecially any thing that may be to the good and profit of the commonwealeh; and it is better to learne late then neucr : and he that hath a trade, let him looke vnto it, and hee which will notlabour, let him not eate, faith Saint $P$ aull.

Schol. What trade would you haue me to learue?
Maffer. Such a trade or occupation, as thy minde bendeth moft vnto, and then to apply thy felfe to it, and follow it, and fritie by honcf meanes and paincfull labour to be rich, for thoun maycf be poore when

## The Schoole of Defence.

thou wilt, but there is notrade good to him which will nos to follow it, for he ehas hath neuer fomany trades, and yer giueth his mind to drunkennefle, and louch to leade an idle and loytering life: fuch a one will neuer thrise, but lit ian Ale-honfe, and complaine, that the world is hard, and that worke is very feane; indecde, fo it is widh fuch a one, for a man can feldome finde them in their owne houfes, whereby to put worke into their hands, but thole that doe looke for worke, andattend it, need neuer to want worke, but will alwayes be in other mens woike, or elfe they will be able (by their good hasbandry) to (ecthenfelues aworke, and it is a very bad commoditie, that will nor yeedde mony at one time or other.
Do you underitand me? if not, I will make it more plaine, hearken to that which followeth, then aboue all, gine not thy minde to ranging or running from Towne to Towne, or from Countrey to Countrey, for a rolling ftone will neuer gather moffe, the Grafhopper will rather die then goc out of the grafle; and thoul (with good behauiour) mayedt better line with 2 groat in chine owne Countrey, then with a pound ina ftrange place, for in a frange place, ahihough thoube of good bebauiour, yet masy will feare thee, and be ioarh to giue thec credite, and will thinke, if thou wert of good behauiour, thou thouldet bane had noncede to come our of thinc owne Countrey: Againe, thy lying away will be a great difcredite vnto thee, ifthou thinke to come home againe; for eucry manalmoft will be loath to puscredite, or anie thing of valew into the hands of a ranger, becaufe that they are not refolued that thy minde is fetled to Atay in thime owne Country, when thou dult turee

The Schoole of Defence.
71
from thy race againe. Many men there are that confiunctheir time in ranging abroade, and at the latt, fecing the vanity of the word, they recall themfelues, and epent of the time which they hane confinmed in tanell : but then they hane experience although no money; now Experience is no colner, nor a tradefmanwoortha piane withou his tooles; for what anaydechit to be a cunning Gold-finith, and hateneyther gold nor filuer: fou there are that will tupt a maueller any further then they can fec him, clpecialiy, ifhee have beene one thas hath ferued as a Souldies in a forreine Countrey: therefore, afthongh lione be homely, indenour thy felfe to lincby honeft and goodmeanes, andbe contented withthine homely home; but beware, lpend not Michachafferent in Midfummer quarter abronde, as manybad husbands victodne.

Now if a trade be tootedious for thee tolearne, or too painefull for thee to follow, then goe thou vies the warres, and ferue cyther by Sea orLand, as thy affections hall belt leadethee vato: butinfecking by the warres to get wealth, if thou loofeit thy lite while thon art young, thon needeft not to care for oldeage; yet by the wartes (ifforene ferue) buteo fpeake more Chmitian-like (if God will) thon maict gethat monchoure, which (with good diferetion and grouenemen) thoumay ef be the betier for, fo longas choulinef: the goods which do come by the wares, areneyther lighe comeby, wor godtily cor- The warresare ten (in my minde;) yermany thinke thatwealth gure men of stone ten by the wares, is eafily goren; for to it appearech halles fire by the prodigalland vanefpending of it: wherefore tive watas I would have thec luanith thy folte with Diferetion dirike.

## The Schoole of Defence.

and Knowledge before-hand, that thereby thou maint the better vie wealth when thou haft it; but then thou nuff not abulc it, as many other Souldiers haue done heretofore : for I have knowne many get both goods and money by the warres, but hauc inade no other reckoning, but as one would fay, lightly come lightly goe; and fo fuffering it to mele away 1 like butter in the Sunne : therefore if thou happen, by the wartes, ypon that may doe thee good, keepe it warily, and fpend it wifely: for it is laid, a dog thall hauc a day, and a man fhall hane his time; but ifhe let Time flip, The is bauld behinde, and therefore no holde to be taken of her after her backe is once turned; for I have knowne many by the wars, get at one voyage, enough to liue by all their liues long, if withdifcrecion it had bin gouerned; but they have confumed it in fo hore a time, that a man would thinke it impoffible; and then to the warres againe they go in hope of the like fortune, but they have not in feauen yeares, nay all their life time got fo much, as they feent in one day, when they had crownes.
Goods gotten arelikaliuc vpon wealth, that thou commeft not light by is, if Bird in the thou get it by the warres, though indeede it is goten land,which, in an houre, yet it is gotten with great hazard of thy
the hand no fooner opened 1 life, and no doubt it is difplealing to God, for goods but ffic frait gotten by the warres feruc but for fpending mony for fiechaway. the time prefent; thofe which doe faue them, and hoord them vp, they are confumed before two generations doe paffe, yea though it were aboundance, it cometh to nothing, as in my farcwelloo Plimmouth more at large appearech.
Now (in my miade) the third and the wort choife

The Schoole of Defence.
8 r
I haue left till the laft, and that is a feruing-mans life yet it is as it happeneth, for fome happen into good feruice, and fome againe fpend fealuen yecres, yca all their life time, and to they grow the older, litele the wifer, nor nener a whit the richer; and fome of them neuer care fo they haue from hand to moneth, nor nener thinke vpon a rainy day vutillit come, and gentemen are wilc for they will not keepea dog and barke themfelues, neither will they keepe a cat except thee will catch mice ; therefore if thou wilt be a feruing. man thou mult take great paines, otherwifc thou wilt haue final gaines at the end of thy fervice; yex though thou be neuer fo painfull and durifull, yee when thou lookeft to receiue thyreward, there may be fuch great fault found in thy feruice, that all the golden words and faire promifes which thou laft becn deluded and haled for ward withall, they may all come to nothing except thy bare wages, there may be a bill of caucling put in for the reft, faying if thou hadt becu an honelt man, thou thouldeft hane had this or that, if thou line neller fo vprighty, yet there may be faults found, for it is a very ealice matter to find a flaffe to beat a dogge withall, but becaufe I cannot well difplay the life of a feruingman, but either I hall difipleafe the Mafter or the man, or both; therefore I will here conclude, and leaue the reft to thy daily experience, and fo for a while harken vito the skill of weapons.

The Schoole of Deforte.
Chap. XII.
Sheweth of feauen principall rutes whercon true defence is grounded.
$\left\{\begin{array}{l}1 \text { A goodgard. } \\ 2 \text { True obferuing of diftance. } \\ 3 \text { Toknow the place. } \\ 4 \text { To take time. }\end{array} \quad\left\{\begin{array}{l}5 \text { Tokecpe Patience. } \\ 7 \text { Offen practife. }\end{array}\right.\right.$

T
He firf is to learne n good and a furegard for the defence of thy body, as when you come to the ff of weapons, as hecre prefently afecr fhall follow, and when thoulaft thy gard it is not enough to know it, but to keep it folong as thou art within reach or danger of thy enemy.
To oblerue diftance, by which is meant that thou mouldeft fand fo far off from thine encmy, as thou canft, but reach him when thou doll ftep toorth with thy blow or thrult, and thy forcmoit foote and hand nult goe together, the which diftanee may be twelue foot with a rapier, or with alword fowre foote long, and yet thy bett foot which thould be the hindermolt foot of a right handed man, fhould bee mored fat and keepehis ftanding without moouing an inch, for then he will be the readier to draw backe thy fore foot and body into the right place of diftance againe for that thou mult doe vpon euery charge, whecher thou hitthy enemy or not; whereas if in fepping foorth with thy fore-foot, when thou dolt charge thy enemy either with blow or thunt, thon fuffer thy hinder foot to dregge in after the other, then thonbreakeft thy diftance, and thereby endangereft thy body. There is no way better to get the true obfentation of
diftance,

The Schoole of Defence.
83 diftance, but by often practife cither with thy friend, or elle priuately in a chamber againft a wall, ftanding twelue foot off with thy hindermont foote, and thy weapon fowre foot long or there about, for a good gard and diftance are the maine and principal points of all.
To know the place, this may be taken three wayes, as this, the place of thy weapons, the place of defence and the place of offence: the place for the holding of thy weapons, thou thale know when thou comment to it as I faid before, but it is chiefly meant heere the place of offence; thou mult marke which is the neereft part of thine enemy towards thee, and whichlyeth moft varegarded, whether it be his dagger hand, his knee, or hisleg, or where thoumain bell hurthimat 2 large diftance without danger to thy felfe, or withoutkilling of thine eneny.
To take time, that is to fay when opportunity is profered thee, either by his lying vnregarded or vpon thy enemies profer, then make a quicke anfwer, I meane it muft be done voon the very motion of his profer, thoumuft defend and feeke to offend all at once, for thou mult not fuffer thy enemy to recouer his gard, for if thou doe thou loofeft thy aduantage. Burthou muft anfwer him more quicker then I can Speake it, for if thou loofe thy anfwer, and charge thy enemy when he is garded, thou giueft thy enemy that aduantage which thou mightef haue had thy felfe, for he which maketh the firft affault doth endanger himfelfe molt, if he be not very expert and cunning in his bufineffe, otherwife a man of reafonable skill may hure him by making a quicke anfwer.
To keepe face this may be concciued two wayes;
the one in the fpacebetween thy enemie \& thy felfe, this I call diftance, and I have already fooken of ir; bur the fpace which in this place I will fpeake of, is to adure thee to keepe a certaine fpace betwixt cuery affult, I meane if thou clarge thy eneny either with blow or thruft, recouer thy weapons into tiscir place, and draw thy felfe into thy gard againe, and fo preparing thy felfe for to defend, and likewife to make a freth affault with diferction, but not charging thy enemy rathly or furioufly, for haftineffe is foolithnes: for iffury haue the vpper hand, and fo you both frike and thruft, without reafon and iudgeinent, I fay in firch a cife the skilfulleft man that is, may be fo well hit as hehit another.

The next is patience, and that is one of the greateft vertues that can be in a man : the Wife man faith, he is a foole which cannot gouerne himfelfe, and he very vnfit to rule which cannot rule himfelfe; therefore, though thoube haftic or cholericke by nature, and by croffing thouart moued unto anger; yet I fay, let the bridle of Reafon and Iudgenent fo gouerne and o. uer-rule thy haftie affections, that in no cafe Anger get the vpper hand; But of this there is more at large fpoken in the eight chapter. Now the latt thing that I will note hecre, is often practife, for without practife the Prouerbe fayes, a man may forget his Pater nofter: for practife (with moderation) is, not onelie the healthieft thing in the world for the bodic: but it is likewile as defenfiue for the fatne. For skill to eueric reafonable man is a friend, fo that with moderation itbevied, and fo longas it remaines in thofe of good temper; for vnto fuch, skill bringeth no more prefumption nor furie then as if they had it not:, for

The Schoole of Defense.
85
in the field, thofe which I meane willure it as if they werc in a Schoole, by which meanes fuch haue great aduantage of the ignorant and vnskilfull; for thofe which are vnskilfull, are neither certaine of their defence nor offence; but what they doe is vpona kinde of foolifh bolde hardineffe, or as I may lay by haphazzard or chance noddy: and therefore (gentle Reader) refolue vpon skill and knowledge which follows heere immediately.

> The true guard or the def ence, either of blowe, or thruft, with Rapier and Dagger,
> or Sword and Dagger.

KEepe thy rapier hand fo low as the pocket of thy hofe at the armes end, without bowing the elbow ioynt, and keepe the hilt of thy dagger right with thy left cheeke, and the poynt fomething fooping toward the right fhoulder, and beare him out ftiffe at the armes end, without bowing thine elbow ioyne likewife, and the poynt of thy Rapier two inches within the point of thy dagger, neyther bigher, nor lower; but if the point of thy rapier be two or three inches fhort of touching thy dagger, it is no matter, butif they ioyne it is good; likewife, kecpe both your points fo high as you may fee your enemy clectely with both your eies, betwixt your rapier and dagger, and bowing your head fomthing toward the right fhoulder, and your body bowing forwards, and both thy fhoulders, the one fo neere thine enemie as the other, and the thombe of thy rapier hand, not vpon thy rapier, according vito the vfuall fafhion of the vulgar fort, but vpon the naile of thy fore-finger, which will locke thine hand the ftronger about the

## P 2

handle

86 The Schoole of Defence.
handle of thy rapier, and the heele of thy right foote fhould ioyne clofe to the middle ioynt of the great toe of thy leff foote, according to this Picture, yet regard chiefly the words rather then the Pieture.


Carric the edge of thy sapier vpward, and downeward, for then thou' fialt defend a blow vpon the edge of thy rapier, by bearing thv rapier after the rule of the Backe-lword, for this is the ftrongeft and the fureft carriage ofhim.

But now it is but a vaine ching to goe abour to praaife after my direQtion, except thou viderfarad my meaning, and follow my counfell, as by words to plaine as I can, I haue fet downe, both before and after: for ifthou obferue one thing, and not an other, it will profit thee burlittle, as thus : if shou place thy
weapons

The Schoole of Defence.
weapons in order; and then, if thy hand,foote, or body be out of order, then it will be to fmall purpofe to proceed in thy practife: againe, if thou frame thy bodie right, and thy weapons, and thy hand, and thy foote; yet if thou do not obferue a true diftance withall, then thy practife will be little auaileable to thee: wherefore at the firt beginning of thy practife, take a good aduifement, and be perfect by often reading of this Booke, fo to beginne well; for if thou haft beene ved to fet thy feete abroad in thy former practife, as moft men doe, then it will be hard for chee to leane thy old wont.

Now, if thou wilt breake thy felfe of that fathion and pradife after my ules, then will I hew thee by and by; for when chou haft my fathion, thou mayent goe to thine owne againe when thou wilt, if in triall thou finde it better.

The beft way to bring thy feete so a fure ftanding, both for defence and offence, is when thou doff praCife with thy friend or companion; at the firt ger thy backe to the wall, and lethim that playeth with thee fland about welue foore diftance, and fet thy left heele clore to the wall, and thy right foote hecle en the great ioynt of the left foote great roc, and when thou intendeft to offend thy enemy, either with blow or thruft, then fteppe forth with thy right foote, and hand rogether, but keepe thy left foote faft moared like an anchor, to plucke home thy body and thy right foote into his place and diftance againe; vfe this fa. Shion but three or foure times, and it will bring thee to a true ftanding with thy foore, and it will be as eafie to thee as any other way; whereas if thou practife wa large roome without any foppe to fet thy foot a-
$\mathrm{P}_{3} \mathrm{gamf}$,

The Schoole of Defence.
gainft, then will thy left foote be alwayes creeping away, fo that although thou wouldett refraine the fetting abroad of thy feer, yet thou cant nor, efpecially if thou hatt been vfed to fer them abroad heretofore.
Now your bodie and weapons being thus placed as aforefaid, if your enemie ftrike a blow at you, either with fword or rapier, beare your rapier againft the blow, fo well as your dagger according vnto the rule of the Backe-fword, for in eaking the blow double you thall the more furely defend your head, if the blowe doe chaunce to lighe neare the point of your dagger, for if you truft to your dagger onelie, the blow may hap to glance ouer the point of your dagger, and cndanger your head, and hauing defended the blow double (as aforefaid)prefently turne downe the point ofyour rapic: iowards your enemies thigh, or anie part of your enemics bodic, as you lift your felfe; and with your thruft fteppe forth alfo with your foote and hand rogether, and to making a quicke anfiver, youmay endanger your enemie in what place you will your felfe, before hee recouer his guard and diftance againe, and alwaies fer your rapier foot righe before the other, and fo neare the one to the other as you can; and if thou be right handed then thy right foote muft bee formont, if left handed, then thy left foote, and ftanding thus in thy guard, looke for thy aduantage, I meane where thine encmie lieth moft vngarded; but firf thou mult be perfect in the knowledge of the true and perfeat guard chy felfe, fo thalt thonknow the better where thine enemic lieth open, then thou mult fteppe foorth with thy fore foot, and hand together, to offend thine enemie in fuch a place as thou findent vnguarded; but fo foone as thou haft
prefen-

The Schoole of Defence.
89 prefented thy thrunt, whether thou hit or miffe, fall backe againe to recouer thy guard and diftance fo foone as thou cant, but ftand alwayes fatt on thine hindermofl foote, I meane whecher thou frike or thrult, and then Chale thou recouer thy guard; and hauing recouered thy weapons in their right place, then thou mutt alfo trauerie thy ground to leifurably, that thou mayelt be fure to have one foute firme on good ground before thou pluckeft yp the other; for clfe, going fill about, thoumayeft quickly be downe if the ground be not eucn. Alfo hane a lpeciall care that thou be not too bufic in making of play, though choller or foo nacke prouoke thee thereunto. Furthermore, in fanding in thy guard, thou muft keepe thy thighes clofe together, and the knee of thy fore legge bowing back-ward rather then forward, but thy bodic bowing forward; for the more thoulholloweft thy bodee, the better, and with leffic danger fhalt thou breake chine enemies thruft, beforc it cometh neare to endanger thy bodic; and when thou breakeft a thruft, thou munt but let fall the point of thy dagger, but not thy dagger atme, for fome will throw their dagger arme backe behinde them when they breake a thrut, he that fo doth cannot defend a fecond thrult if his enemy thould charge him againe fodainely.

## The reafons of this guard.

FIrA, the points of your weapons being clofed, your enemy cannot offend you with a wrift blow, which otherwife may be ftrucke to your face be twixe your poincs: likevife, there is a falling thrult that may hit any man whichlies open with his points by following it into his face or brcaft, and thrufting

The Schoole of Defence.
ithome withall: alfo, it you carrie your rapier point voder your dagger, your own rapier may hinder you, for by curning downe of your daggor point, to defend the bodie from your enemies point, according vnto the firt of the foure defenfible waies, as hereafier followetb: then your owne dagger may hit your owne rapier, and fo your rapier will be as it were a ftumbling blocke, fo that you cannot difcharge your enemies thruft cleane from your bodie; and alfo by friking your dagger von your rapier wilbe a hindrance vnto you, that you cannot make a quicke anfwer, by chopping out your point prefently vpon your defence : for if you haue anie hindrance at all, then your chiefe time of offence is fpent, for before you can recouer your rapier, your enemie will haue recouered his guard, and he being in his guard your proffer of offence is in vaine : for if you will hit your enemie, your offence and defence muft be done all with one motion; whereas if you continue a fpace betwixtyour defence and your offence, then is your beft sime of offence fpent, for when your enemie chargeth you, either with blow or thruft, at that verie inftant time, his face, his rapier, arme, thoulder, knee, andlegge are all difcouered, and lie open, excepe the oppreffour be verie cunning in recouering his guard haftily againe, or he may defend himelfe with his dagger, if he beare him ftiffely out at the armes end, for in your offence the dagger hand hould be borne out fo farre as the rapier hand goeth, which mult be done by practife and great carefulneffe; for many when they doe make their affault, they will put out their rapior, and plucke in their dagger, thereby endangering themfelues greatly: for except that the dagger arme bee

The Schoole of Defence.
9\%
kepiftraight,and borne our Qiffe, it is hard to defend cither blow or thruf.

```
A thruft may be defended foure wates.
```

T${ }^{-} \mathrm{He}$ firf is with the dagger, onelie by turning of the point downe, and tirning thy hand-wrift about withall, without bowing the elbow ioynt of thy dagger arme, but onelic turning thy dagge: round, making as it were a round circle, and fo prefendy bring vp the poine of thy dagger in his place againe.
Now the fecond defence is with the dagger likewife, but then you mult beare the hilt of your dagger fo lowe as your girdle-fteed, and the point more vpright then is defribed in the firft picture, and in yourdefence of a thruft, you muft beare your dagger hand Rtiffe ouer your bodic, without leting fall the point but fill keeping him vpright.
The third waie to breake a thruft, is, with the fingle rapier; this' defence will defend all thy bodic froma thruft againft a rapier and a dagger ; and likewife it is a fure defence for thine hand, if thou haue not a clofe hilted dagger, when thy enemic doth proffer a thruft, plucke in thy dagger hand, and put out thy rapier arme, and beare him ouer thy bodie, the point bowing toward thy leff fide, breaking the thruft with the edge of thy rapier, keeping thy point ypright : but when I come to the fingle rapier, then you fhall fee it moreat large.
The fourch way is to defend a thruft with both your weapons together, and that you may doe three maner of waies, either with the points of both your wean

Q
pons upwards, or both downeward, vpward you inay frame your felfe into two gards, the firft is according as I haue defcribed afore, the points being clofe according to the picture, fo carrie them both away together againf your enemies thruft breaking towards your left fide; the other high guard is to put your rapier on the out-fide of your dagger, and with your dagger make a croffe, as it were, by ioyning him in the middeft of your rapier, fo high as your breaft, and your dagger hilt in his vfiall place, and to defend your thrult, urne downe the point of your rapier fodainely, and force him downe with your dagger, by letting them fall both togetherthis way you may defend a thrull before it come within three foot of your bodie; and this way idefendeth the thruft of a ftaffe, hauing but onelica rapier and dagger, as you fhall heare more when I come to the ftaffe : for it is good to be prouided with the beft way, if a fodaine occalion beoffered: and for che blow of a faffe, you may veric eafily defend with a Rapier and Dagger, by bearing him double; and fo hauing detended the blows goc in hattily vponthim, for there is no ftanding out long againta faffe, and fo likewife vpon defence of a thruft yourmuit be verie aimble in your golng in within the point of hits ftaffe, I mean fo foone as your encmies thruft is paffed vnder your Rapier arme, for that way the thruft of the Itaffe Ghould goe.

Threc manner of monics for the holding of a Rapier.

$T$
Here are ehroe waies for the holding of a Rapier, the one with the thumb forward or vpon the Rapierblade; and that Icall the naturall fathion, there
is another way, and that is with the whole hand within the pummell of thy Rapier, and the thumbe locking in, of the fore finger, or clfe they mult both ioyne at the leaft : this is a good holding at fingle Rapict.

Then the third is but to have onelie the fore-finger and thy thumbe within the pummell of thy Rapier, and thy other three fingers about thy pummell, and beare the buton of thy pummell againft the in-fide of thy little finger; this is called the Stokata farhion, and thefe two laft are che fureft and frongeft waies: after alittle practife thou maief vfe themall three in thy practile, and then repore thy felfe vpon that which thou findeft beft, but at fome times, and for fome purpofe all thefekindes of holding thy Rapicr may fead thee, for a man may performe fome manner of flips and thrults, with one of thefe chree fortes of holding thy weapon; and thou canf not doc the fame with neither of the other: as thus, thou maieft put in a thruft with more celeritic, holding him by the ptimmell, and reach further then thou canft doe, it thou holde him on either of the two other farhions.

Againe, thou maief turne in a llippe, or an ouerband thruft, if thou put thy thumbe vpon thy Rapier according as I haue fet it downe, calling it the nitturall fathion, and is the firlt of the three waies for hold: ing of thy Rapier; and this falhion will bec a great ftrength to thee, to giue a wrift blowe, the which blow a man may ftrike with his Rapier, becaufe it is of fmall force, and confumes little time, and neither of the uther two fathions of holding wil not perform neither of thofe three things; for if thou holde thy rapier either of the two fecond waies, thou canfinor turne in a llippe, nor an ouer-hand thruft, hor gine a

The Schoole of Defence.
writtblow fo fpeedily, nor fo ftrong : wherefore it is good to make a change of the holding of thy weapon for thine owne benefie, as thou thale fee occafion: and likewife to make a change of thy guard, according as thou feeft thy beft aduantage; I meane if thou be hardly matched, then becake thee viro thy fureft guard, but if thou be matched with an vnskilful man, then with skill thou maieft defend thy felfe, although thoulie ar randome.

The reafon that your points fhould be fo high, as you may feeyour enemic plainely and cleerely vnder them, is for a fure defence of a blowe, if your enemie fhould charge you therewith to either fide the head, then beare them both double together, and hauing defended the blowe, prefently turne downe the point of your Rapier toward your enemies thigh, and with turning your knuckles inward, fteppe forth with foote and hand together, whether you hitte or miffe, retreitnimbly into your guard and diftance againe.

And although I doe aduife you to keepe the point of your Rapier fo high, yer withall I doe warne you, that you maic haue a fpeciall care to fallyour point, and withall thruft him our, if your enemie doe ouerreach or preffe in vpon you, whether it bee upon cheller, or vpon ftomake, or vpon a kinde of foolifh bold hardineffe, or if hee make a paffage vpon you, orifhee doe breake diftance by anic of thofe waies, although hee doe it neuer fo actiuelie, yet may you defend your felfe with your Dagger and either of fend your enemic by a fuddaine falling the point, and with the fame motion chop in with a thruf to that part which lieth molt difcouered as you may quick-
ly perceiue when you fee his lying.
The cunningef man that is, and if hee meete with one skilfull, with whom hee is to encounter withall, cannot before hand fay in fuch a place I will fure hit thee; no more, then a gamefter when he gocih to play can fay before he begime, that hee will fure win, for if he doe, be may be prooued alier if his cunning were neuer fo good.

So that before hand you cannot determin where ro hit your enemy, bue when you lee your enemies gard, then it is eafie to iudge where it is open, if thout knoweft a clofe gard thy felfe, for hee which cannot write himfelfe, can give bur fmall tudgement whe: ther another write wellorill, and if thine enemie doe incroach within thy diftance, then bee doing with himberimes in the verie inftant of his motion whether it be motion of his body, or the motion of his weapon, or in the motion of both together : put out thy poine, buenot to farre, but as thoumaieft haue thy rapier under command for thy owne defence, and alfo to prouide him ready againe to make a full thrult home vpon a greater aduantage, for if thou anfwere a ful thruit home, in the inftant of thy enemies affaule, thou maieft endanger thy felfe if thy enemie doe falfifie his chrult, and therefore make your thruth hore at the firt, or if your enemie doe beare his points anie thing abroad, then youmay fall in betwixt them, either to his face or breatt, or if his fore foote ftand two foote diftant or leffefrom the other if hee ftand not clofe, then you may hure him in the knec or legge, either with thruft or blow as hee Etandeth in his guard without anie danger to your telfe, and that is no killing place.
$Q 3$
Like-

The Schoole of Defence.
Likewife it is faid before looke vnder both your weapons, if with on eye you looke ouer either of weapons, you may bec hit one the fame fide, either face, head, or moulder, eitber with thruft or blow before you can put up either of your weapons in his place to defend it, and this know and remember it well, it is the nature of an Englifhman to fltike with what weapon foeuer hee fightech with all, and not one in twenty but in furicand anger will Arike vnto no other place but onely to the head, therofore alwaies if you fight with rapier and dagger, yer expect a blow fo well as a thruft, and alwaies defend the blow double as aforefaid, but if your rapier poimt be downe vnder your dagger, you cannot put him vp time enough to defend a blow, but muft take it fingle on the dagger, or on the pare, for if your skill were neuer fo good trulting tơthe dagger onelie you may bee deceiued by reafon of the tharpeneffe of your dagger, if the blow light neere the point it may glance ouer, and fo hit you on the head, and alfo by reafon of the fhortneffe of your dagger which are now moft commonly worne of allmen, for I haue knowne men of good skill deceiued by trufting to the point, or dagger onely for the defence of a blow, the dagger is not fure to defend it.
For lookchow But when you make anic plaie to your enemie much you whether it be offer, or an anfwer, ftop, right as a line ficp wide you forwards from your left foote, for if you top halfe ground
wards. Wards.
as it wereby rule, then you loofe halfe a foote of your fpace betwixe you and your enemie, and if you fep likewife a foote wide, then you loofe. likewife a foote

## 97

of aduantage. For your inftruction hercin, when you practife in a clamber, looke what boord you fand vpon, you fhould in deliuering either of blow or thruff, alwaies fteps foorth with your right foote vpon the fame boord which the left foote flandech on, for looke how much you left your fore foote wide of the fraight line towards your cuemie, you loofe fo much inyour reach forward, as in your pratite you maie fec the triall and vfed often in pratife in fome Chambers with your friend vatill you are perfect, and in your practife, keepe your left foote faft moared, that as an Anchor pullech home the fhip, fo the left foote mult plack home the right foote and bodic into the right place of diftance againe, or as the helme guideth the hip, euen fo the left foote mutt guide the bodic, alwaies bearing thy full belly towards thy cnemic, I meane the one fhoulder fonecreas the other, for if thou wreathe thybodie in turning the one fide neare to thy encmie then the other, thou doft noe fland in thy frenget, nor fo readic to performe an anfwere, as when thy whole bodie lieth towards thy enemic.

## The manners of a $\mu a /$ fage.

APaffage is to bee made aduifedlie with a nimble actiutic and celerity of the bodie, for hice which wil goc in with a paffage \& efcape,or go elcere awaic with all, the which is veric hardly to bee done if thy enemie be skilfull, and therefore in the performance thereof, thou mult haue great skill, nuch practife and good iudgement, elpecially ia obferuing the point of thy encmies weapon, and like-
wife thou mult not confume one iote of time in thy performance, for fo foone as thou feef thy enemic beare his point feadie in anie guarde, whether it bee high or low, as if hee doe beare his point a loft, then flep in with thy left foote with a fudden iumpe, and clap thy Dagger vnde: his Rapier croffe-waies, and fo bearing vp his point ouer thy head, and at the verie fame inflant that thou ioyneft with his Rapier, then chop in with thy Rapier point withall so offend him, but thou muft confume no time in faying anie Space betwixt thy Defence and Offence, for thou muft not make twotimes of that which may be done at one time, and againe, it is thy greater aduantage to docit quickly, if thy enemic doe lie in a fteadie guard, but if hee keepe the point of his Rapier variable, then it is not to bee done but with the greatent danger of all.
The fecond opportunitie to paffe vpon your enemic you have, if your enemie doe carric the poine of his Rapier fo low as your girdle ftead, or thereabouts, then you mult fep in with your left foote, and with your dagger Arike awaie the point of his Rapier, and with thefame lec your Rapier paffe vnto his bodie, as beforefaid, 1 meane both at one time.

The third aduantage is if your enemie doe laie the point of his Rapier necre, or vpon the ground, then ftep in with thy hindermon foote and croffe your Daggor ouerthwart his Rapier, keeping his Bapier downe, fo that hee cannot raife his point before that you haue hit him, and are recouered to your diftance againe.

The fourth waie is you being both in your guard
according to the firt picture, or anie other guard according'to your practife, and then fainc a thruft downe to his knee, but prefentlic raife your point againe with a iumpe fourc foote fide-waics towards the left fide of your enemic, and mount vp your Rapier hand withall, and pur in your thruft ouer your enemies Dagger, into his Dagger fhoulder, and fo with all poffible fpeede recoucr your guard and diflance againe, by fpringing or inmping towards the left hand of your enemic, and fo youfall away frora danger of his point: but in falling backe againe, your Dagger wuftbe prepared to defend a fecond, or a parting thruf, if your eneny fhould charge you therwithallimmediatly.

Yet therc is another kinde of paffage, and that is an anfwer vpon your enemics proffer, if your enemic do offer a thruftaryou, defend it with turning downward the point of your Dagger, and at the very faine inflant flippe in with your leff foote, and put in your thruft into his bodie, for by ftepping in with the, left foote it goech in fo frongly, that ic is hardly tobee preuented.
Some that are ignorant will fay that it is not pofible to defend a paffage, but I fay there is no deuife to hit a man neither with thruftnorblow, but there is a true defence to be fhewne by one that is skilfull, but yet not cuery one that profeffech himfelfe to be a Fencer cannot teach true defence, buc it munt be fuch as have beene grounded in the true art of Defence by great practice, fucha one it nurt beto teach defence.

## The danger of apafage is tobepresented three waies.

THe firt is by an actiuc and nimble fhift of the body by falling back with the righr foote, \& the danger being paft to charge haftily vpon your enemy againe, but the beft wzy is in lying in your guard according to the firft picture, as your enemie commeth in with his paffe fuddenly vpon the firft motion, fall your poine, and in the very fame time put him out withall, and with your Dagger onely defend his paffage, if it bee charged at your body, by turning the point downeward, but if hee put it into your Dagger fhoulder in manner of an Imbrokata, then you muft not let fall your Dagger, except you leaue your Rapier ro be a watchman for the defence of your iholder or with bearing them both together it maybedefence.

## Another defence of a paffage.

THe fingle Rapier alone,being carried according vnto the rulc of the fingle Rapier, as hereafrer Shalbe defcribed when I cometo that weapon, now if your enemie doe take the point of your Rapier, the which hee may very well doe by reafon of the high caxiage of hun, if youbec not carefull to fall your point when you fee him conkning in, well if hee doe make feffure of your poins, yet fee cannot ftay your Rapier hand, but that you thall haue nwo foote of your Rapier and che hilts ap your command for the defence of your bodie, which by fwearuing or beating him ouer yourbodie, towards your left fide, and a little turning your bodic by falling backe

The Schoole of Defence.
101 with your formof foote, this is a good dofence for a paflage : but indeed a man mun haue practife, and bee as wee call them a good feholler, thac is fuch as bee skilfull; for a paffage comuneth with fuch celerity shat one whichuis not vfed to it, canuot deferue the comming of it, for there is no thruft fo fwift, nor fo daungerous as the paffage, but yet thete is no thruft, nor blow nor paifige, but by skill and cunning it is to bee defended and auoided, for a inan fhall deferue the comming of a parffage fo plaine as a Havke, when thee intendelh to fie at Check, fitting vpon the Pearch, a man may veric cafily perceiucby the fetling of her felfo to flie, indeed it is dangerous and deadly, excepe your mindebee vpon your bufineffe, for when you are at your play, you muft expect a paffageand falfe play afwell as srue play, or plaine thrufts, for the hure of the paffage is moft dangerous of all and moft mortall, for with a paffage a man cannot fay I will hurt my enemic but alitele, as you may with any other thruft, being put in at the length, I ineane obleruing atruc diftance, for hee that otherwife breaketh ditance may be affoone hit himfelfe, as hec hit another; therefore the paffage is feldome orneuer vfed in fight, alchough they bee both neuer fo skilfull in purting forth a paflage, or if one can paffe, and the other cannot, but hee that can paffe will be doubtfall left, the other wil intrap him in his owne affault, for why may not thy enemy bee as skilfull as thy felfe, once if he meete thee in the field, hee fhewech himfelfe valorous therein, and if it be thy fortune to hure him by want of skill in a mauner anongit men, hee is reported to be as good a man as thy felfe, in regard

R 2

## 102. The Schosle of Defence.

he aduentured himfelfe with that fmall skill hee had, and then in refpect of an honeft minde, oughtefto Thew him fome fanor, if he be not too forward, whereby hee is like to endanger thee, but yet rather hure, then be hurt, and rather kill, then be killed, if there be no remedie.

## Falfeplay at Rapier and Dagger.

Y
Ou muft proffer, or faine a thruff a foote aboue your enemies head, bur prefently plucke backe your hand againe, and put home your chruft which you meane to hurt your enemsic withall vader his Dagger arme, either vnto his body or thigh, as you will your felfe, but ftep not forth with your foote when you faine a thruft, but with the fecond thruft which you meane to fpeed your enemie withall, les then your foote and hand goe together, for in faining it oucr his head, it will feeme to him that you meanc to hit him in the face, fo that fodainely hee will lift vp his Dagger, thinking to fane his face, but he cannat put him downe fo quickly againe but that you may hir him !as aforefaid: againe if you profer or faine a thruft to your enemics knee, I meane more quicke then I can fpeake it, thruft it into his Dagger fholder, or to his face whether you lift, for you thall finde them both vngarded, for when hee putteth downe his Dagger to defend the fained thruft, hee cannot lift him vp againe before you haut hit him as beforefaid, if his Dagger arme were neuer fo ftrong, nor neuer for ready, hiee muft put downe his Dagger and fo hee will, or elfe you may bit him in the breaft, for no man can tell whether the fained thruft will
come

The Schoole of Defence.
103
come home or not, but hee which doth ehruft it, if the defence were ncuer fo skilfull, bur now the onely way to defend a falfe thrult, is with the fingle Rapier, for when that the Dagger falleth to cleare the fained thrufi from the body, then the Rapier mult lauc the vpper part, I meane the face and fhoulder, by bearing him ouer your bodic as you doe at the fingle Rapier, and fo by that meanes the Rapier will defend all the bodic fo low as your knce. By falle play a Rapier and Dagger may encounter againft a Sword and Buckier, fo tha: the Rapier manbe provident and carefull of making of his affault, that hee thruft not his Rapier into theothers Buckler : but the falfe play to deceiue che Buckler, is by offering a fained thruft at the face of him that hath the Buckler, and then prefently put it honac to his knee or thigh, as you fee occafion; for he will put vp his Buckler to laue his face, butcan not puthim downe againe before you hauc hit him, as aforefaid.

Likewife you may proffer or faine a thruft to the knee of the Buchler man, and purt it home to his buckler Shoulder, or face; for ifhee let fall his Buckler to fauc below, hee can not put him vp time enough to defend the vpper parts of his body with his Buckler, but munt truff for his defence, to his fingle Sword: whercfore it behooneth cueric man to be skilfull in the Backe-fivord. The beft way to make a falfe thruff, is to ftrike it downe by the out-fide of your eneninics Rapier hand, but not to thruft it home, and fo prefently bring vp the point of your Rapier, and thrunt it home to his left houlder; for if you thruft the fained thruft within the compaffe of his Dagger, then is may be he will hit the point of your Rapier, in offe-

## 104

The Schoole of Defence.
ring to breake the fained thrult; and if he doe but touch your Rapier in your firf proffer, then you cannot recouer your point to put home your fecond thruft, before liee hath recouered bis guard, and fo will preuent you : therefore, if you doe make a falfe thruft, prefent it without the circle or compaffe of his Dagger, that in his defence he may miffe the hitring of your point, then hath hee bue the fingle Rapier to defend your fecond thruft, and hemutt make his preparation firlbefore hand with his Rapier, if fuch an occafion be offered, otherwife it cannot be defended.
Now there be diuers other guards to be vfed at the Rapier and Dagger, but molt of them wil aske a great deate more practife, to be perfe $\mathcal{E}$ in, then this firf guard, and yec noc anie one of them more feuere for defence both of blow and shruft then this firft guarde is, and therefore I doe account it the mafter guard of all other, yet in a Schoole, to make change of your play, then the more guard the more commendable, fo they be performed with difcrection and iudgement: therefore I haue deferibed thofe which I thinke neceffary, although not fo at large, as heereafter you Thall haue them in a fecond booke; for at fome times, and for fome purpofes, one guard may better ferue then another: for change of guards may croffe fome mens play, whereas if you vle but one guard, may in ofen play be worne threed bare, therefore learne as many farhions of lying with thy weapons as thou canf, and then in thy often practife make triall which thou doft fir bef withall, and that repole thy felfe vpon at thy mont neede : for I haue knowne many that could well defend themfelues at one gard better then
at another, although hee be acunning teacher, yee he cannot make all his Schollens frame themfelues vnto true defence, all vfing one guard, wherefore there muft bee triall made; for if the Scholler be dull of conceit in one guard, yee it inay be hewill fic better voto another, fo thofe which I hame found by my triall and practife, so be guards of defence, I put them downe briefly as followeth, bue I thinke it were as good lefechem vadone, as begunne and not end them, yer thou halt hatuc a talte, for by a calte men Ghall fee what wine is in the Bute.

## The croffe guard.

C

- Arry the point of your Dagger vpright, and the Ahilt fo low as your girdle-ftead, without putting your thumbe againtt the blade of your Dagger, but griping him faft in yourhand, and the point of your Rapier vader your Dagger hand according to the pioture.

Lying thus in your guard, yourbellic or breate willferme to be open or vnguarded, fo thar he will make no doubr but to fpeede you in his firlt affault; but he charging you wirh a thruft, for your defence, ifit be abone the girdle. ftead, then carry your Da:ger fteady ouer yourbodic, keeping the point vpright and beare him towards your right fide, but in yourdefenoe, doenot turne the point of your Dagger downewards, but prefently bring lim into his righe place againe, and then vpon his offer or making of play, if he charge you abouc the gerdle- Aead, then defend it with the Dagger, and prefently teppe in with your left foote, and thrult withall vnco what

106
The Scboole of Defence.
part of hisbodie you lift; bur if he charge you vnder the gerdle-ftead, then defend it with your Rapier, ftriking it downeward; now you muft make your felfe ready to take your time of aduantage in your anfwering: I meane in the very motion of your enemies affaule, defend and offend borh with one time : ifyou both lic vpon this guard, looking who thall make play firft, then make you a hore thruf, but prefently clap into your guard againe, and fo you fhall draw him to make play, and yet be firme and ready in your guard to take your greater aduantage, which mult be done vpon your enemies charge; for when he hath charged you with his thruff, and you defended your felfe; as before-faide, then feppe in with your left foore to anfiver his affaule, prefently vpon your defence. Now if your enemy lying in this guard, and wil not make play, then the beft aduantage which you haue of your enemy, is charging him (iin a manner) as it were with a wrift or a dropping blow to his face, breaft, or knce, puting it in lope wife, by turning yourknuckles inward, and when ic is lighted on the place which you determine to hirgthen thruft it home withall, and this thruft being put in llope wife, is the beft thruf to hithim which lieth in the crofle guard, and the defender muft be ready and nimble with his Dagger for his defence; or otherwife to be preuented: but for a froake, or a fore-right plaine thruf, it is with more eafe defended by him which hath the perfecteffe of this guard, then it is by lying in anic other guard.
Now if your enemy doe lie on this croffe guard, youmay proffer a fained thruft at his breaft, and prefeutly pus itinto his Dagger fhoulder on the out-fide

The Schoole of Defence.
of his dagger arme: this falfe thruf maybe defended with a quicke bringing backe of the Dagger againe: but then the defender mult not ouer carry his dagger to defend the falfe thruft, yet hee muft carry him againft eurery offer.
Another defence belonging to this guard is lying in this croffe guard, if your encmy charge you vnder the gerdle-ftead witha thruft, frike it by with your Rapier, by letting fall your Rapier point towards the ground; but if it come aboue, then defend it with your Dagger, as before, butdo not carry your Dag. ger aboue halfe a foote; for if you oucr-carry your Dagger, you may be endangered by the falle play. Againe, if you make the firft proffer, and your cnetfiy lying in this guard, then, fo foone as you haue made your thruft at him, prefently let fall the point of your Rapier to the ground-ward, lifting yp your Rapier hand, and defend his anfwere with your Rapier, by friking it outward, I meane towards your righthand, So that his thrunt may goe cleare on your right fide, for your Dagger will not defend your enemies anfwere fo well as your Rapier, efpecially vpon this guard.
Many hauc had a good opinion of the flokata gard, but (in my minde) it is more wearifone vnto the bodie, and not fo defenfiue for the body, $2 s$ the firft gard following the firl Pidure; my reafons are thefe, the hile and rapier hand being borne fo farre back behind the bodic, it cannot defend a blow, for the blow will light before you can beare out your rapier to beart the blow backe fword-way, as it fhould be done,ncither can the Rapier defenda falfe thruf, anda falfe thruif muft bo defended with the Rapicr onclic : Alfo S

The Schoole of Defence.
the point of the Rapier being borne fo lowe as this guard reftraineth them, the face and breaft lieth open, or elfe vato a fingle defence which is not fure; therefore keepe two ftrings to thy bowe, it is fafe riding at two anchors a head, but if a man were put to an extreamitie, then it were better to hauc halfe a loafe then no bread, better to defend it fingle, then to take it on the skinne, and fo I will with words defcribe this guard, and fome other.

## Tbe Stokata gward.

YOu munt (if you will frame your felfe into this guard ) keepe the Dagger point out-right, and fo hie as your cheeke, and your Rapier hand fo farre backe, and fomething low as you can, and your fecte threc foote difance ar the leaf, and this guard many Profeffours doe reach as the chiefe and maifter guard of all other, Now the reafons which they fhew to draw men into this guard, is firft fay they, the head bowing backe, then the face is furtheft from danger of a thruft or blow : now to anfwere this againe, I fay, that although the face be fomething further from the enemic, yot the bottome of the bellie, and the fore leg is in fuch danger, that it cannot be defended from one that is skilfull; and to bee hurt in the bellie is more dangerous then the face, whercas if thou frame thy guard according unto my direction following the firf Picture, then thale thou tinde that thy bellie is two foore (at the lealt) further from danger of a thruft ${ }_{t}$ and fo is the foote likewife, and the leg fafe and out of danger both of blow and thruft: and now thy face will feeme to be, and is the neerelt part to- being in lis right place, neareft vnto thy face, readie todefend him : againe, hee which flandeth abroad with his feete, will alwayes be in icaloufio of his fore: leg, the which muft be defended by plucking him vp nimbly at eueric blowe and thrult, and yet that will not furcly defend him from a thruf, ,ubut admit you do defend the leg by placking him vp, then doe you loofe your time of anfwering your enemic, which fhould bee done in the fame time which you plucke vp your leg, and before you can cone in againe with your anfwer, your enemie will have recouered his' guard and diftance againe : There are many other guards, fome of them I will touch alitele, and fonie of them I will leaue vntill an other tims : thereare three high guardes, one of them I will fpeake text of, becaufe it is a great enemie, not onelie vinto the Stokata guarde, but it likewife croffeth all other guards, and it followeth in this maner.

Keepe your thumbe long wayes vpon the blade of your Rapierl, according vnto the naturall Arte; the common holding of the vulgar fort, and your fecte fo clofe together, as you can, and the hilt of your Rapier fo hie as your cheeke, boiving the elboweioynt of your Rapier arme, and your Dagger hilt ro lowe as your gerdle fteade, and beare the point of your Dagger vpright, and the Rapier point on the in-fide of your:Dagger, both clofe together, locking vnder your Rapier, and beare our your Dagger at the armes end, without bowing your elbow ioyint; and if your enemie charge you with a thruft, carrie the chruft with your Dagger toward the right fode, keeping the point of your Dagger vpright, nortur-


#### Abstract

110 The Schoole of Defence. ning him in yourdefence this way nor that way, but beare him feady ouer your body, and fo you may defend any manner of thruft : for if you beare your dagger (as aforefaide) your enemies point will paffe cleere vinder your Rapier arme, buehauing once defended, in the very fame motion you muft life vp the hile of your Rapier, and eurning your knuckle vpward, and withall, turne your point downe into your encmies rapier houlder, ftepping foorth with the right foote and hand together, your defence and offence mun be all done widh one motion. Now if your enemie charge you with a blow, you are as readie to defend it double on this guard as in anic other: but if thou cliarge thine enemie, or make the firt affault, prepare thy: defence forche Rapier fhoulder,by carrying dyy Dagger ouer shy bodie, kecping the point of thy Dagger vpright. This defence is good zo bee vfed again 1 a left handed man likewife. Now he which is well experimented in this guard bee will finde ieverie dangerous for offence to thine enemic, and defenfure for thy felfe, abouc allother guardes, efpecially if thou haue difcretion to lie at warch diferectely, and ta take thine opportunitie and aduantage, when thine encmic proffereth anit kindc. of play ypen thee.


## The carneleffe ar the haxieg guard.

Ay the poine of your Rapier vpon the grounda foote wide ofyour lefufide.ouerthwart your bodie, and ler the hill of your rapier rel ypon your

## The Sckoole of Defence.

III right thigh, and your dagger vider your rapier about a foot forward of the hilt, and fol cauing your whole belly or breft, will fceace a verie faire baite for your encmie to thruft at, but when hee chargech you with a thruft, your defence muftbee by the lifting vp of your Rapier point, with your Dagger, throwing him ouer towards your right fide, but lift not vp your Rapier hand in the time of your defence inanie cafe, for fo it may endanger the face, but fo foone as you hane turned it clecre oucr your bodic with both your weapons as aforefaid (it may bee done with one of them, but not fo well becaufe not fo fire as with both together)then vpon your defence recoucr your point haftily againe and chop him in with an ouer-hand thruf, turning your knuckles vpwards into bis right fhoulder where you may eafily hit him if you bee quicke in taking your tune before hee recouer bis diftance, or get out of your reach. This is no painefull guard, but veric cafic and quickly learned, and it is a veric fire guard to detend any manner of thruff, now vpon this guard if your cnemie doe falfefie a thruf vpon you by offring it at brcaf or face, whereby to make you life vp your weapons, thinking to lhit youbeneath with a fecond thrunt by reafon of your lifting them up to fanc the other parts the which you muit doc, buc fayling of it aboue, bring downe your Dagger quickly againe to defend below the fecond thrult.

## The forc-hand guard at Rapier and Dagger.

PVt thy Rapier hand vnder the hilt of thy Dag. ger,alwaies keeping the point of thy Rapier fomething variable, and yet fomething directly about the girdle-ftead of thy enernie, and the point of thy Dagger in a manner vpright, or a verie little leaning towards thy lefe fide, and both thy Dagger and thy Rapier hilts together, and both folow as thy girdleftead : thofe being guarded, if thy enemie doe charge thee with a thruft, cartie thy Dagger quicke ouer towards thy right fide, and make a prefent anfwere by chopping out the point of thy Rapier, and fo hattily into thy guard againe, expecting a frefh charge.

## Tbe broad warde.

BEare out both your armes right out from your bodie fiffe at the armes end, and a foote at the left a funder, and turne both the Rapier and Dagger hilss fo high as your bref or hier, leauing all your bodie open, orvngarded to feeme co, and when your enemic doth charge you with a thruft, flrike it with your Dagger towards your right fide, and withall anfwere him againe with an ouer-hand thruft vnto his Dagger fhoulder, but you muft keepe your thumb vpon the blade of your rapier, for then thall you pur in your thruft the more fteddier, and the more fronger.

The names of the chice ef thrufs, which are vfed at Rayier and Dagger,with the manner bew toperforme them.

A
Right Stock, or Stockata, is to bee put in vp. wards with ftength and quickneffe of the bodie, and the guard for the putting in a foke is leaning fo farre backe with your face and bodic as you can, and the hilts of your Rapier fo neere the ground, or fo low as you can, but of this guard Ihauc fpoken fufficientlic alreadie.
Aflope Stocke is to be made vito your enemies breaft, or vnto his Rapier moulder, if hee doe looke ouer his Rapier, but in putting it in, you mult wheole abour your Rapier hand, towards your left fide, turning your knuckles jaward, this thruf being pur in llopewite as aforefaid, will hit thy encenic which lieth ypon the Croffe-guard, or the Careleffe-guard, or the Broad-ward, when a right Stock or plaine fore right thruft willnothit.
An Imbrokata, is a falfifying thruft, firf to proffer it towards the ground, fo low as your enemies knee, and then prefently pur is hone vinto your enemies Dagger-fhoulder, or vinto anie part of his Daggerarme, for hee will put downe his Dagger to defend yourfained thruft, but cannot recouer his Dagger againe before you hauc hit him in the Dagger arme, Shoulders or Face, whectier you willy your felfe, for in proffering this thrulf, there is no waic to defend the vpper part, the Dagger being once downe, but oncly with fingle Rapier, and excepta man doe expect it, it cannotbe fo defcnded ncither.

## An ofber tbruff called \& Rewerfe.

AReverfe is to be made, when your enemic by gathering in vpon you, cauleth you to fall backe with your right foote, and then your leff foore being formoft, keeping yp your dagger to defend, and hauing ouce broken your enemies thrult with your dagger, prefently come in again with your righe foote, and hand together, and fo put in your reuerfe vito what part of his bodic you pleafe, for it will come with fuch force that it is hard to be preuented.

## Aibruff called a Montatato.

T${ }^{1} \mathrm{He}$ Mountanto is to be put in with a good celeritic of the bodic and in this manner, youmult frame your guard when you intend tocharge your enemie with this thruf, beare your Rapier hard vpon, orfo neere the ground as you can, lying verie low with your bodie, bowing your left knee .verie nere the ground allo, and either vpon your enemies thruf or inlying in his guard you may frike his rapier point toward your right fide with your dagger So that it may paffe clecre vnder your rapier arme, and with the fame motionas you ftrike his rapier, fodainely mount vp your Rapier hand higher then your head, turningy our knuckles vpward, but turne the point of your Rapier downewards ouer his Rapier arme into his breaft or fhoulder, and you mult be quicke in the performance of this thruft, and likewife nimbly you muft leape out againe. This thruft muft bee put in by the ftepping forward of your left leg : sow if yourfe this thruft more then once, your as you did before, but then put it in the fecond or third time vnderneath, and you fhall hit him about the girdle fead, and fo becaule at this tine I will not bee ouer tedious I leave to fpeake of manic other strufs.

The bef way for the bolding of a Dagger, either to breake blow or thruff, and foure waies bad as followeth.

F
Irft, if you hold your dagger too high, you may be hit vnder the Dagger-arme.
Secondly, and ifto low, you may bee hit onet the Dagger-arme, either in the arne, fhoulder or face.

Thirdly, \& ifyou beare your dagger too much to wards your rapier-fhoulder, then you may bee hurt on the out-fide of the arme by bearing narrow, for fo we call the carriage of him, being borne in this manner before fpoken of.
Fourthly, if to wide from your bodie you may bee hurt on the in-fide of the arme, face or breaft: if the dagger-elboe ioyntbee crooked, then there is fmall force in the dagger-arme for the defence of blow, or thruft, but the dagger being borne out ntiffe at the armes end, defendeth a blow frongly, as you hall heare by and by.

## Eeare waies nanght to breske a thruff.

FIrf,ifyou breake a thruf downe-wards, it may hit you in the botom of the bellic.

Sccondly , if you breake him vpwards it may T

116 The Sthoole of Defence.
endanger you in the face.
Thirdly, and if youbreake your enemies thruf towards your Rapier-fide, it may hit you in the Rapierarme.

Fourthly, or in breakinga thrult, if you let the weight of your Dagger carrie your Dagger-arme backebehinde you, then your enemic may with a double thruft hit you before you can recouer vp your Dagger in his place againe.

Agood way to defend a thraft or blew.

THe bef holding of a Dagger is right out at the armes end, and the hilt euen from your left checke, and the point compafling yourbodie, 1 meane bowing towards your Rapier-fhoulder, and when you breake a thruft, turne but only your handwrift about, letting fall the point of your Dagger downe.watd, but keepe out your Dagger-arme fo fiffe as you can, fo hhall you bee readie to defend tiventie thrufts one afrer another, if they come neuer fo thicke, and likewife you are as readie for a blow; whereas if you fall your arme when you breake your thruf, your enemie may hit you with a fecond thrunt before yout can recouer your Dagger in his place to defend it, for a thrun gqath more fwifter then an arrow hot our of a bow, wherefore ainan cannorbee too ready, nor too fure in his gard; Now both for defence and Offence of eierie blow' 'and thruft, thou mut turne thy knuckles vp-ward, or downe-ward, inward or out-ward, alwaies turning your hiand according to the nature of the guard, that you frame your felfe vnto, or according as when youl fee your ene-

The Scbooke of Defence.
117
mies guard, then you muft determine before you charge your enemie either with blow, or thruft, in what manner to turac your hand in your Offence or Defence, fometimes after one manner, and fometimes after another, as both before and hereater Thalbe fufficiently fatisfied more at large.

## The trwe gward for the fingle Rapier.

K
Eepe your Rapier point fomething floping towards your left fhoulder, and your Rapier hand fo low,as your girdle.fead, or lower, and beare out your Rapier band right at the armes end, fo farre as you can, and keepe the point of your Rapier fomething leaning outwards soward your enemic, keeping your Rapier alwaies on the out-fide of your enemies Rapier, but not ioyning with him, for you numt obferue a true diftance at all weapons, that is to lay, three foote betwixt the points of your weapons, and twelue foore diflance wish your,fore foote from your enemies fore foote, you muft bee carefull that you frame your guard right, now you muf not beara the Rapier hand-wide of the rightefide of your bodie, but righs forward from your girdlc--Read, as before\&aid.


The Reafons of this gward.
N keeping your point fomething floping or compafingyour face, your enemic cannot offend you with a wrift blow, which if you keepe your point directly vpright, youmay verie eafily bee hit in the face.
Being guarded as beforcfaid, if your enomic difcharge a thruftat you, carrie your Rapier hand ouer your bodie towards. you left fide, keeping your point directly in his place vntill you haue defended your enemies affault, then prefently after let fall the point of your Rapier, turning your knuckles inwards, and difcharge your thruft at your enemies thigh, or bodic,as you fee occafion.
There arelikewife many other guards to be framed

The Schoole of Defence.
119 at fingle Rapier, as that one of the thort Sword is a good gurd at fime times, and for fome purpofes, if a man be perfect in it, by skill and practife aforehand, as heercafter you thall fee the manner thereof more at large, when I come to that weapon.
Now anocher fahion is, by holding your Icfthand $v$ pon the blade, and fo with the flrengith of your forefiuger and thumbe of your left hand, you may breake your enemies thruft clecre off your bodie, by turning of yourr rapier point downe-ward or vp-ward accordingly, as your cnemic chargeth youl; and then clarga your enemie ag aine with a quicke anfwer.

Now another is, by fanding vpon the focke, readie to choppe in vpon your enemies affault, but you muft turne in your left floulder to your enemie nearee then the right, onclic to be as it were a baite vnto him, but whien he doth thruft at you, whecle about your bodie, falling backe with your leff foote; but withall, thruf out your rapier, and fo you may hit, and defend, onelie with the fhift of thebodie, and you thall find that the oppreffor will come vpous his owne death, by proffering as that fhoulder, which you make fhew to be oper vito him : bue you munt not offer ro defend it with your rapier, but only ruft vato the thift of your bodie.

Falfe play at the fingle Rapier.
TF your enemic doe lie in this guard, aceording to this Picture, then proffer or faine a thruit vnoo his leffide, but prefently plucke backe your hand, and thruft it home vnro his right arme fioulder or face; for hee will carry his rapier ouer his bodie, to detend

I 3
the

## 120 The Scboole of Defence.

the fuined thruft, but can hardly bring himbacke againe to faue your fecond or decermined thruft, except hee be very skilfull, a atiue, or nimble : now if he doe not beare his Rapier to defend the fained thruft when you proffer it, then you may hit him with 2 plaine thruft he fecond time, if you put it home with. outfalling itat all.

## Another deceit.

L
Ikewife, you may proffer or faine a thruft two foot wide of your enemie his right fide, and prefently thruft it home to his brean, for hee will beare his rapier beyond the compaffe of true defence, by reafon it will feeme vnto a cunning player that your intention is to hit him on the out fide of the Rapier arme, fo that when he thinketh to ftrike your point from offending his arme, by that means hee will open his bodie, although he open himfelfe but a little, yec with your fecond thruft you may hit him as aforefaid.
The defence of this falfeplay.

YOumunt be very carefull that you doe not ouercarry your Rapier io the defence of anie maner of thruft, yer you muft carric him a litle againf euery proffer which your enemie doch make : for if a man be verie skilfull, yes is he not certaine when his enemiedoth charge his point vpon him, and proffer 2 thruft, whether that thruft will come home, or no: wherefore (as I faid) you muft beare your Rapier 2 gainft euerie thruft to defend it, bue beare him but

The Schoole of Defence.
121 halfe a foote towards the leff fide, for that will cleare the bodie foom danger of his thruft, and fo quicke backe againe in his place, whereby to mecte his weapon on the other fide, ithe charge you with a fecond thruft, thinking to deceille you as aforefaid.

Afippe at ingle Rapier.

NOW ifyour enemy doe charge you wich ablow, when as you tee the blow comining, plucke in your Rapier, and let the blow llippe, and then anfwer him againe with a thruft, butbec carefull to plucke in your rapier to that checke which hee chargeth yor at, fo that if the blow doe reach hone, you may defend him according vnto the rule of the backfword.
The defence of this fippe is to forbeare ftriking atall, but if youd doe ftrike, not to ouer. Atrike your Sword, but foltrike your blow as you may reconer him into his place baftily againe; for iof fighr if yon doe ftrike, you mutf forbeare At ong blowes, for with a ftrong blow, you may fall into diuers hazzards; therefore frike an eafie blow, and doe it quicke, bue to thruft, and not frike atall, is to thy belladuantage.

> Unotber lippe.

PVt your thumbe long wayes, or forward.vpon the handie of your rapier according vnto the natural fafhion, and your enemic lying in this guard, ioyne your Rapier according as the Picture, and fo coone as youhaue ioyned, curne the hecle of your hand

122 The Schoole of Defence.
hand vpward, and your point downeward, and fo bring your point, compaffing vider your enemics right elbow; and then with the frength of the thumb turne it into his breaft : the like you may doe if your enemie offer to clofe with you at fingle rapier, for if bee come haftily ypon you, you can not drawe out your point whereby to offend him, but by turning is in as before-faid, you may hit the skilfulleft man that is in his comming in : Now, if hee doe defend your point below, you may by a fodaine turning vp your point, thruft it home to his righthoulder or face, whether you will your felfe.

## The defence of this Sippe.

Fyour enemie doe ioyne his weapon with yours; to clofe or to turne in a flippe;, then make your felfe readie quickely, by putting your thumbe vpon your rapier, as aforefaid, when he falleth his point towards his left hand, to fetch the compaffe of your xapier arme; then fall your point the contrary way, I meane towards your left hand, fo thall you mecto with his weapon below againe, and this will defend your felfe; and when he raifech his point againe, then doe you raife yours likewife into his place againe.

## Anotber Slippe.

TF your enemie doe ioyne his rapier with yours, and docbeare him frongly agaiuf you, thinking to ouer.beare you by ftrength of arme, then fo foone as hee beginneth to charge youftrongly, beare your rapiet, alitue againft him, and then fodainely let fall
your

The Schoole of Defence.
123 your point fo low, as your gerdle-fteed, and thruft it home withall, and fo you may hit him, for by letting his Rapier goe away fodainely, he fwayeth away beyond the compaffe of defence, fo that you may hit him , and fall away againe before hee can recoucr his Rapier to endanger you.

## Adazeling tbruff at fingle Rapier or Backe-fword.

P
Roffer or faine a thrulf at the fairefl part of your enemies bodie which licth mof vnguarded, and then more quicker then I can fpeake it, thruft it in on the other fide, and fo changing threc or foure times, and then choppe it home fodaincly, and you fhall find his bodic vnguarded, by reafon that he will carrie his Rapier or Sword this way or that way, thinking to defend the falfe thruft, becaufe he fuppofeth them to be true thrufts : for there is no man fo cunning, that knowech if a thruft beproffered within diflance, bur that it may hit him, or whecher it will be a falfe ehruft, or no, the defender knowes not, and therefore he muft prepare his defence againft euery thruf, wat is proffered.

## A clofe at fingle Rapiet or at Backe-fword.

FIrf, charge your enenie with a thruft alofe with an ouer-hand thruft, directly at your enemies face, and wiftall follow it in clofe, bearing your your enemies point oucr your head, by the carrying vp of your Rapier hand, and then may you make deifure on the hilt of your enemics Rapier or Sword, or on his hand-wrift with your left hand, and then hawing made feifure of his weapon, you may then vfe


The guard for the Backe-fword.

CArrie your Sword-hilt out at the armes end, and Ayour point leaning or floping towards your left houlder, but not ioyuing with your encmies weapon, as this Picturc feemeth, but folong as you lie in your guard, let there be three foote dithance betwixt your weapons, but if your enemie do charge you, either with blow or thruf, carric your Sword ouer your bodie againft your enemies affault, and fo croffe with him according to the Pieture, beare alfo your point ftedie ouer your bodie, fomething floping towards your left houlder; I meane the point muft goe fo farre as the hilt, but not turning your point the contratie waie, but carrie them both toge-

125
ther. I will make it plainer by and by, becaufe I would haue thee to vnderfand it wifely, for having with a true defence defended your eaennics blow or thruft by croffing with him, or by bearing your weapon againft his affault(as beforefaid) the danger being paft, then prefently at the fame infant, and with one motion turne downe the point of your Sword, turning your knuckles inward, and fo thrufting it home to your enemies thigh, but with all, fteppe forth with your foote and hand togecher.
But chere is a great obferuation to be had in your practife concerning the true carriage of your point, for in your defence if you do not carrie your Sword, true, then it is hard to defend either blowe or thruft; for if you carrie the hilt of your Sword againt either blow or thrunt, and doe not carric the point withall leuell, cuen as you lay in your guard according to the Pieture; then your hand and face is endangered, bue bearing the hilt and the point about a foot ouer your bodie towards your left fide; and likewife to beare your Sword fliffe out at the armes end, without bowing of your elbow ioynt : prouided alwaies, that your Sword being in your right hand, you muft look with both your eies on the in-fide of your $S$ word, for then you haue but one kinde of defence, fo that the point of your Sword be floping roward the left houlder: but otherwife, if youkeepe the point of your Sword vpright, then your enemie hath three waies to endanger you, efpeciallie, if you carric your Sword right before the middeft of your bellie, with the point vpright, as I haue knowne fome hold an opinion of that waic to be good, but I fay, hee that truftech to that guard, may be hitin the head witha fodaine wrin-

V 2 blow,

## 126 The Schoole of Defence.

blow, ifhis pradife were neuer fo good : and likewife both his armes are vnguarded, and to bee dangered, cither with blow or thrult ; butifyou guard your felfe after my diredion, then your enemie hath but onelie the leff fide of your head, and your legges open, and they are eafie to be defended; the legge, by plucking him vp, the which you muft doe vpon euerie blow, which your encmie chargeth you withall, and with the faine defend the head and bodie, carrying your Sword oucr your bodie towards your left fide, the point and hilt both fededie, as I haue before faid.

Now although I heere fpeake alcogether of a Backe-Sword, it is not fo meant, but the guard is focalled : and therefore, whether you are weaponed with a two edged Sword, or with a Rapier, vet frame your guarde in chis manner and forme, as before faid.

## An otber very /are and dangerous guard at the Backefword, called the irnicorneguard, or the fore band guard.

B
Eare the Sword hilt fo high as your face, keeping him out at the armes end, without bowing of your elbow ioynt, and alwaies keepe your poine directly vpon your enemics face, and your knuckles of your fivord hand vpward; but if yourenemie doe charge you with a blow to the right fide of your head, then turne but your Sword hilt, and your knuckles outward, ftill keeping your Sword arine ftiffe in his place, trrning but onelic your wrift and your hand: this is a very dangerous guard to your enemie,

## The Schoole of Defence.

127 nemie being carricd with a frong arme, for by reafon that you keepehim out at the points end, being fodirealy in his face, that bee cannot comeneare you withour great danger, cither of blow or thruft, but indeed if yourfword be not carricd out with a frong arme, then your enemic may endanger your head by ftriking of two blowes together, the one being flrooke at the point of your fword to ftrick him downe and the other to your headbue they mutt bee ftrooke both to gether veric fodainclic, or elfe there is fimalldanger in them, now ifyou are watic in watching when hee makes his firftlow, fodanely plucke in the point of your fword to you, and fo by that flippe his firft froake hee will oucr carrie him, focthat if you rurie an oucr-land blow to his head, you may hit him before hee can recoller his fiword to ftrke his fecond blow, or defend himfelfe lying in this long guard, you may flippe cueric blow that is frooke, placke in your fiword cuen as you fec your enemie ftricke and turne it ouce to the right fide of his head.
cAClofe at bsek-fword.

LYing in thy guard according vito the picture at fingle Rapicr, and when you meane to clofe, lift vp the hilt of thy word fo high as thy cheeke, and charge thy cnemic witha chruft directlie ar his face, and with the fanc motion fleppe in with thy hindmonf foote, tuening the knuckles of thy Swordhand inward, and fo bearing thy enemics point ouce thy head, and then catch hold on thy enemies Sword-hilt, or on his hand-wrift with thy left hand,

V 3

The Schoole of Defence.
but on his hile is the fureft to hold, and then you may either trip vp his heeles, or cut, or thrult him with your weapon, and in this manner youl maie clofe with a Rapierallo, if you can make your partic good at the gripe or clofe, for your enemie in bearing ouer his Sword ouer his bodie to defend his face from your thrult, he there by caricth awaic his point, fo that hee cannot endanger you if you follow it in clofe and quicke.

## Falfeplay with the Back-froord.

Y
Our enemie being in his guard, and lying at watch for aduantage, you maie faine ablow at the right-fide of his head, and prefently with the turning of your hand-wrift, frike it home to his leftfide, which being done quicke you may hit a reafona. ble good plaier, for he will beare his fword againtt the fained blow, and by that meanes vnguard his left-fide but atno hand you mult not let the fained blow touch your enemies fword, bur giuc your fword a fodaine checke and fo trike it to the coneraric-fide, for if your feined blow do ioine with your enemies fword, it will faie his fword within the compaffe of true defence, fo that hee will be readie to defend your falle blow, but otherwife if you touch not his fword hee will carric him beyoud the true compaffe of defence, of the fecond blow, which you determine to hit him withall, fo likewife you may faine your blow at the left-fide of your enemies head, but prefentlie frike it home to the right-fide of his head, in manner as aforefaid.

Lanother falfe play.

AGaine, you may ione your fword within you enensics fword according vnto the picture, but prefentlic fo foone as you hauc ioyned, Atrike it downe to hislegge, burnimblie reconer your fword in his place againe falling a little awaie withall, for fo foone as you haue difcharged yourblow, youmay verie cafilie before hee can endanger you reconer your guard and diftance: likewife youmaie gine a back-blow vnto the right fide of his head, and prefentle withall, fall downe againe with another blow vnto the infide of his legge, ftepping home wirh your fecond blow, for when you hatue made your fint blow as aforefaid, it may bee your enemie will winke, and fo you may hit his legge before his eies openagaine, fo that you do it quick, but if he doe not winke, yer a good plaier will thinke that when hee hath defended yourfintblow a loft, hee will not expect a blow fo fodainelie as this ought to be Arooke, and therefore may be hit with a fecond blow, yea although hee looke well to himfelfe, and the rather that manie doth not alow in there teaching a backe-fword blow to be froken at the legge, but I lay a man may gitie a fquare, or fore-hand blow to the infide of his enemies legge, and yet verie well reconer vp your fword againe betore your cnemic can endanger you.
-Arother deceipt.
CTanding in your guard, and your enemie chargDing you with a blow, pluck in your fword fodainelie, and let his blow lippe, and fo foone as his blow

## 130 <br> The Scboole of Defence.

is paft,aniwere him againe, either with blow or thruft whether you will, but if it bee at blunt witha blow, put in right with a thrult, or by plucking in your fivord, and alwaies haue a care you plucke him in vnto that fide of the head which hee chargethyou at, for in fo doing, if his weapons point do reach home, yet you are at a guard of defence, but with this skill and a little withdrawing your bodie with all, his weapon will paffe cleare, for the force of his blow will ouerfwaie his weapon, and he will fo ouer carrie his bodie, that in a manner his backe wilbe rowards you, fo that with a quick anfwere you may but him at your pleafure or clofe with him if youthinke you can make your partie good at the gripe: likewifc you may cloofe vpon the croffe, by ioyning weapon to weapon, but when you haue made your cloofe in your firt encounter, take hold on your enemies handwrift, or elfe on the hilt of your enemies weapon, for then hee cannot well offend you being but fingle weaponed. But to tric your man-hood, at the length of your weapon, I hold it the beft fight and leffe danger to both, for there is no more ceraine defence in a clore, then is in a paffage, for they areboth verie dangerous.

## Another dectipt.

YOur enemic lying in guard, you may Arike a backe blow vnto his right eare, although it light ypon his fword, that is all one, for in friking it aboue, it may caufe him to wink, or he will thinke you haue don, but fo loone as you haue delinered your blow aboue, then prefenclic, I meane more quickes

The Schaole of Defence.
$13^{2}$
then I can Peake it, frike it downe into the infide of his right-legge, orif you doe but touch his fivord in ioyning hime clofe as the picturc flandech, and fo foone as you haucbut touched his Backe.fword on the our-fide, Arike it downe vnto the in-fide of the legge prefentlic, yet alwaies haue a care to recourer your fivord into his place againe for your owne defence, the which you may eafilic doc, yea although you cucounter with a verie'skilfull man, but if you frike a plaine blow'at the legge without profering it aboue firft, as is beforefaid, then you endanger your owne head, but in prefenting it aboue, you bufie him to defend the firt fained blow, fo that he cannot be readic prepared to charge you with anie blow of danger before you hauc recouered your guard, the which you may well doe, alchough he anferere you neuer fo quicke.

## An other verie cunning deceipt with the <br> Back-fword.

CTrikeablow to the in-fide of the right leg, or foot Of thy enemie, but draw is to thee, Atriking it fomething fhort, and then prefently frike it home againe to the left eare of a right handed man, but is muft be done more quicker then I can fpeake it, and thou hale finde his left eare vugarded, for hee will looke for it at the right fide, and it were not amiffe to frike it once or twice from the leg to the righe eare firlt, for then he will looke for the fame blow againe, but yer I would not have you make all your play at the legge, but fomecimes to offer a blow at the one fide of the head, and then to the other, fo by ma-
$\mathbf{X}$ king

132 The Scheole of Defence.
king often change of your blow, is the beft waie to deceine thy encinic.

## Averie dangerous blow at Back. froord.

THy enemie lying in this guard, foddenly plucke in the pummell of thy fword to thy brealt, and with all turne thy knuckles inward, and the prefentie proffer a thruft towards thy enemies breaft, but turne if ouer with a blow to his right eare, with the whichblow thou main hit a good plaier, if he bee not aware of it before hand, for hee muft beare his fword againit the thrult for the defence thereof, now if he do ouer carric him neuer fol little further then he ought to doe for his true defence, then hee cannot bring himback time enough to defend the blow before you hauc hit him, as beforefaid.

```
This blow is alfogoodfor a Left-bandedman,or againfi a Left-handed man.
```

IF you would hit a Left-handed man with this blow, then prefent your thrult fullat his facc by a fodaine lifing vp the hilt of your fword fo high as your head, and withall you mult now curno your knuckles outward, and fo foone as you haue prefented your thruft, prelently frike is home vnto the left fide of hishead.

## Afalfe thrufto be vfed infight at Back-fword.

P
Roffer your thruft two or three foor wide of thy enemies left eare, and withall let fall thypointio low as thy enenies girdle.flead or lower, and then prefently with the fame motion, raife thy point on the other fide of thy enemies fiword, and chop is home vno his right arme, thoulder or face whecther you will your felfe, for in bearing his fword ouer his bodie to defend the fained thruft, hee cannot well recouer him backe againe to defend your fecond thruft before you bane hit him, as beforefaid, excepr hee hath by much practife beene vied to that falle thruft before hand.

## An otber dangerous blow.

THy enemic lying in his guard, Arike ablow to the in-fide of his rightleg, and prefentie withas much fpeed as poffible thou canft trike it home vnto his left cheeke, for he will beare ouer his fiword to defend the firt proffer, and fo with-draw himfelfe into his guard, fo that he willbe vnprouided for the defence of his left fide, ific bee fruck in with a quicke hand. All manner of falle blowes, flips and thrufts at what weapon foeuer, are to be ausided and defended with the true carriage of thy weapon,as at Rapier and Dagger, if a falle chruft be made below, it muft be defended with the Dagger below, and with the Rapier abouc. And if cither blow or thruft be falfified at the Back-fword, or at Sword and Dagger, thou muft beare thy Sword againf eucry proffer,

X 2
bue

134 The Schoole of Defence.
but be fure thou doenot oucr-carrie him, but that thou maift be quick backe againe, to meetehis fecond blow on the other fide, as bringing thy weapon into his place by practife, thou fhalt finde thy felfe furely guarded as in fome places in this booke thou fhalt finde the defence.

After the falle play at eueric weapon, althought haue not fet downe the defence of euerie flip, nor of cuerie fault, which had beene verie neceffarie: for as eurrie leffon on a fiddle hath a feuerall tune, euen fo cucric guard and cucric falfifie hath a feuerall kinde of Offence, and Defence, but heere thon halr finde the Defence that belongeth vnte manic of them, and the reft I left out for want of leafure to write them, but they fhall follow in the next Impreffion.

## The true guard for the Staffc, which wewill call the Low guard.

KEepe the point of your Staffe right in your ene: mies face, holding one hand at the veric bute end of the Staffe, and the other a footesand a balfe diftant, looking ouer your Staffe with both your cies and your feer a foot and a half diftance, or thereabouts, according to this pieture, alwaies fanding croffe with your encmie, I meane, if his right liand and foote be foremolt, let yours be fo likewife, and if his left-hand and foote be formort, then inake you your change and croffe with him alfo.


Now, if your enemic doc charge you, either with blow or thruft, you lying in the guard, as aboue thewed, then your defence is thus: and if he charge you aboue the gerdle-feade, either withblow or thruft, Arike your felfe againft it, keeping vp the point of your ftaffe, fo high as your head; but fo foone as you haue defended, whether it be blow or thrunt, prefentlyanfwer your cnemic againe with a thruft, and then hatily recouer your guard againe, and in gituing of a thruft, you may let gocyour forc-hand from off your Staffe, but hold the butte end faft in one hand: and fo foone as you haue difchargod your thruf, plucke backe your Staffe, and clap both your hands on him againe, and recouer your guard; but yet ftay notlong, to fee whether your enemie will beginne withyou, bus begin with him firf, with a falfe thruft,

X 3
as

The Schoole of Defence.
as anone you fhall fee the manner how to doe it : and when you can doc ir, what neede you to fand long about that which may be done prefently, and without danger?
Now ifhee proffer citherblow or thruft vnto your lower parts vider your gerdle-ftead, if it be a thruft, ftrike it awaie, by tuming the point of your Staffe towards the ground, but be fure to flrike it with that large compaffe, that the point of your Staffe maie pitch, not in the ground, for fo you may deceiue your felfe in your defence, if he charge you fo lowe with a blow, then you may ttrike it as youdo a thruft, or you may pitch the point of your ftaffe into the ground two or three foote wide of that fide which he chargeth your at, and you nay in the pitching downe of your Staffe, let goc your fore-hand, that hee doe not hit him, and then all parts is defended fo high as your bead, fo that you alwaies haue a care to keepe your ftaffe in his right place, that is to fay, if your right hand and foote be formont, then leaue all your bodic open, fo that your enemie can not endanger you on the out- (ide of your itaffe, but if hee will hit you, he mull needes ftrike or thruft on the in-fide of your faffe, and then you mult defend all blowes or thrufts, by bearing your faffe ouer your bodie towards the lefr fide, for this we call the Fore hand Defence, and this defence confumeth no time : but if in holding your ftaffe in the right hand, as before is faid; and yet for your guarde doebeare your Sraffe ouer towards the left hand, then you leane your right thoulder arme or face, open or vnguarded, the which muft bee defended backeward, bue you may defend twentic thrults or blowes beforehand , better

The Schoole of Defence.
137
then one backeward; for the backe defence is nothing fo readic, nor fo certaine, as the fore-hand defence is, and thereforekecpe and continue your guard, according vnto the Pikture, for then if hee proffer a thrut on the out-fide ofyour Staffe: you neede not to feare nor offer to defend it, for there is no place in anie danger, but all is guarded, efpeciallic from the gerdle-ftead vpward.

And in your defence, haue alwaies a care to the true carriage of your Staffe, that you doe not carric him beyond the compalle of true defence, for feare of the falfe plaic : for if y ou ouer-carric your Staffc, I meanefurther then neede doth require, you can not reconer him backe againe quicke enough to defend the falfe. Now, if your enemic doe alfaule you ypon the contrarie fide, you mult change both your foote and hand to croffe with him, as betore : but take heed when you change, you do not come in with your hinder foore, but lethim fand firme and fall backe with the fore-molt foot vpon cueric change. And hauing defended your enemies aflaule, with a little encreafing in, anfivere him witha chruft, thrufting out your Ataffe with your hindermolt hand, and ftepping forth withall, with your foremoft toote, and in the fame inftant of your proffer, let goe your forc-hand, but afec your offence prefently recouer your hand vpon your ftaffe againe : now if your ftaffe be fhorter then your cnemies, then (forypurberter aduantage) ftep in with your hinder foote with your anfwere, but at no hand, neuer ftrike one blow with your Staffe; for hee that doth but life vp his Staffe to ftrike, may eafily be hir by the defender with a thruft, for in the fame motion that the oppreffour doth lift $u p$ his faffe to Arike

## $1_{3} 8$

## The scbioole of Dofence.

frike the defender, may with a peedie thruf hit him in the breaft, and holde him off vpon the point of his ftaffe, if the Defender thruft out his ftaffe with his hinder hand, efpecially if their flaues be both of one length, then hee that frikech, cannot endanger the otber with a blow, for hee that friketh, holdech both hishands vpon his faffe, vntill hee hath difcharged his blow, whereby hee that thruftech, hath two foot oddes of him in length that friketh, fo that hee putteth out his faffe, to his mof aduantage, as bcforefaid.

It is neceffary, that hee which wfeth the Staffe, fhould hane vfe of both his liands alike, for thercby he may the betrer fhift his ftaffe from hand to hand, whereby to lie croflealwaies with your enemie, changing your hand and foote, as hee changeth for lying the one with the right hand and foote for-moft, and the other with the left, then he that fliketh firf, can not choofe but endanger the others hand, but if you cannot change your Staffe to lie croffe with your enemies Staffe : then for your defence of a blow, pitch the point of your Staffe into the ground, and let go your fore-hand, and when you haue difcharged the blow with as much fpeed as you can, anfiver his blow with a thruff, foit the greatell fecret of all moft chicfly to be remembred at this weapon, is, if your enemie doe but once offer to lift vp his hand to frike, then prefently choppe in with a chruft at his breaft, hhoulder, or face, for fo you may hit him as you will your felfe, fo that you take your tinse of anfwering.

If your cacmie ftrike with his flaffe, hee holdeth him faft in both his hands when hee deliuereth his blow, by reafon thereof, he which thruftech and loo-
feh

Peth his fore-hand, when hee difchargeth his thrult or draweth in the fore-hand clofe vnto the hinder hand which holdeth the butte end of his Seafe, and fo thruft him out withall, you may keepe the friker vpon the point of your Staffe, fo that with his blow hee can not reach you, bcing equally matched in length, but muft come vpon his owne death, or danger himfelfe greatly.

## The high guard for the Staffe.

1
Ooke vnder your $S$ taffe with both your cics, with the point hanging flope-waics downe.wards by your fide, bearing out your Staffe at the armes end, higher then your head alittle according to this PiAture.


## 138 The sthoole of Defence.

In looking vaderyour Saffe it willfeeme to your enemic, that your defence is onelie for your head, then he wil thinke to hit you :n the body with a thrunt, for the bodie feemeth to lie very open vniohim, and ifhee doe charge you with a thruft, carry the point of your Steffe ouer your bodie clofe by the ground towards the other fide, and hauing defended the thruf, turne vp the point of your ftaffe prefently towards your enomies breaft, and charge him with a thrut : 2gaine, if yourienemy charge you with a blowe at your head, lift vp the point of your flaffe \& meete the blow halfe way,and withal, draw back your hands, for feare of endangering your fingers: hauing friken away his flaffe, anfiwer him againe with a thruft(as beforefaid:) Now if your enemy charge you with a blow at your fide, either pitch the poine of your ftaffe into the ground to defend it, or elfe change into thy low gard and fo croffe with him; if your enemy do ftrike a full blow at your head, you need not feare neither of your hands, but by friking with your flaffe to meere his blow, you fhall defend it ypon the middle, or neere the point of your ftaffe, although hee doe frike purpofely at your hand, yet can he not touch your hands not anyother part of your body:but vpon the defence of your body draw backe your hands. Now it behoueth you to be perfect, not only in this gard, butalfo in changing your flaffe from hand to hand,according to your enemies lying:to do well you fhould change, as hee changeth, fometimes the point of your faffe fhould be hanging downeby the right fide of your body, and fometimes by the left, according to your enemies lying, the beft way to make your change, is to lee your ftaffellippe through your hands, like a Wea-
uers

The Scluole of Defence.
139
ners fhutte, for this is a more fpeedie change then to thift him after the common manner, and by a little pradifc you may grow perfect in it.

## The beff guard for a darke night at Staffe.

Fthou meet with thine enemic in the nightr, and he charge vpon thee, the beft means for thy defence, is prefently to chop vp iuto this high guard, except thy flaffe be of a fufficiét length, to keep him off, with charging the point ypon him, or elfe the third means is to truft to thy heeles, but if thou wilt truft to thine hands, then either keep him off with thy point, or elfe aboue all parts, chiefly defend thy head, which is not to be done, but only by this guard, except a man may fee the blowbefore it do lightrgnow thou nuft put thy hands alittle further afunder, then thou donfor the day, that the blow may be defended, by taking him vpon thy faffe betwixt both thy hands: ifit light at your head, as it is the fafhion of moft men to Arike at the head (as I haue faid before) rather then to any part of the bodie. Now hauing taken the blowe betwixe your hands, withall, run in and clofe with him, for if you ftand off at the length in fight, anie time, being in the night, it cannot chufe butbe veric dangerous, ifyou fuffer him to difcharge many blows, but either anfwer him with a thruf, or elfe clofe with him, and turne the butte end of your ftaffe into his breaft or face, as you fee occafion: now if is be in the day, or that you can feethe blow before it light; if your enomie charge you with a blow at the fide, meet his blow by carrying ouer to the other fide, \& pitch the point of your flaffe in the ground, and loofe your foremof hand for dangering of your fingers, but hold the hin-

Y 2
der

140
The Schoole of Defenct.
der hand faft at the butte end of your ftaffe. But now; vpon this high guard you can not defend the falfe fo wel, nor fo fure, as when you lic on the low gard;for if your enemie doe proffer a thrut on the one fide your Aaffe, and prefently chop it home to the other fide, he may endanger, nay, hee may hit a skilfull and curning player, efpecially if you ouer-carrie your taffe in defence of the fained blow or thruft.

Wherefore, if you lic on the low guard with your traffe or pike, you thall defend a thrult with the point of your weapon long before it come neare you, $\&$ yet your point is readic ro anfwer more fpeedily then it is when you lie on anie other guard, but he which lieth with his point of the ftaffe or pike on the ground, hath verie little face to his bodie, no more then the length of his arme wherein hee holdeth his weapon: therefore he which fuffreth a thruft to come fo neare, it will quickelie come to tho face or bodie, yet bicaufe moll fouldiers heretoforeliaue vfed this faftion of lying, and are not experienced in the low guard, according to the fird Picture of the Staffe; butif in your practife you vfe both,you thall find the benefue thereof the better; now if you frame your felfe into the hie guard, your faffe muft not be, in length, aboue cighe toot at the molt, but rather fhorter, for elfe in defending your enemies thruft, a long ftaffe will hit in the ground, and by that means, your enemies thruf may endanger you; therefore, for this high gard, you mult looke that your ftaffe be of that lengeh, that you may carrie the point cleane from the ground in defending of a thruft, but for the low gard it is nomatter of what lengeh your Itaffe be.

Quefions

# Queftions and anfweres betwixt the OMafter and Schoiler $z_{2}$ concer- <br> ning the Staffe. 

The Scholler.

YOuhane'giuen me directions for two forts of guards, which doc you commend beft that I may repofemy felfe vpon ?

The Mafter.
I conmend the low guard beft, for that it ferueth with the Quarter-flaffe of feauen or eight foot, or for the Long flaffe of twelue foote, and for the Pike of eighteene foote, for I haue made triall with men of good experience which have lien in other guards according to their practife, as fome at Quarter-ftaffe will lay their point vpon the ground onerthware their bodie, holding the butte-end of their Staffe fo low as their girdic-ftead: he that thus lieth the beft waie to hit him is to proffer, or faine a thrult at his face, and prefendy pur it homebelow, for hee will carrie his Staffevp to fane his face, but cannot put him downe againe before you hauc hir him vnderneath as beforefaid, but with quicknefle you may hit him in the face or breaft, and neuer falffifie your thruft butpur it in fodaincly, turning the heele of hinder hand vpward withall: and if your enemie lic at Halfe-ftaffe, holding him in the middent, his hands that fo lieth, are in danger of euerie blow that commech, but the beft way to hit him that fo liech without danger to thy felfe, is with a falfe thruft, and that is to
$Y_{3}$ proffer

The Schoole of Defence.
proffer it on the one fide of his naffe, and to put it homeon the other, according to the direction of the falfe play that followeth:but firft let me make an end of thar which I haue begunne, and fo wee will proceed, fome willlie with the Long-ftaffe, or Pike with the point on the ground, and the butte end fo high as his head or higher; indeed this hath beene and is common fight with the Pikeamongt the fouldiers, and the defence of this guard either for blow or thruft, is to fwerue his vper-hand, this way, or that way, according as he feeth the danger of the oppreffors affaule, and then prefently launch out the Staffe or Pike by lifting them vp, vpon the out-fide of their foote or elfe by gathering him up on their lefe arme, and fo launch him out as aforefaid: he that vfeth this guard, muft be frong, and verie aetiue, and nimble, but whatfocter heebe, high or low, weake or ftrong, the low guard is beft

## The Scholler.

If the low guard be fo frong for my defence what need have I to learne any other ?

The Mafter.
It is true, 2 man can bebut fure if hee practife all the daies of his life, but ic is nocamiffe for thee to know more then euer thou fhalt have occafion to vfe; for hauing the perfect vie of the low aod high guard, you may clofe with any Staffe man, if you thinke you can make your partic good with him when you haue clofed.

Tbe Scholler.
I pray you diredt me the beft manner of clofing.
The Mafler.

When you encounter with any man that hath a Staffe, Staffe, a Welch-hooke, or a Halberr, and your felfe being armed with any one of thefe weapons, prefent a thruft to the face of your cnemie, and withall, follow it in with your hind-moft footeallo; and as yon incroach in, clap vp your Staffo into the high guard, and you fhall carric your enemies point ouer yous head by that meanes, but you muft not beflack in following of it in, for hee will beare the point of his weapon fo high to defend his face, that he cannot recouer his Staffe by no meanes to endanger you, and when you haue made your clofe, you may turne the But-end of your Staffe in his face if you lift, or you may trip vp his heeles, if you be cunning in wreltling:but if hee have any fhort weapons about him, then I with you to take him about the middle and vn-arme him of it, or elfe to hold him faft that hee hurt you not, but if you bee armed with a Bill or a Hooke, then in yourhalfe-clofe you may fall away turning the edge of your Bill or Hooke towards his legge, and to by a drawing blow rake him ouer the Shins, and keeping vp the But-end of the Staffe for the defence of your owne head, and foyou may fall our of his diftance, and recouer your guard before he can any way endanger you.

If your enemieclofe with you after this manner, and doe offer the But-end of his Staffe wnto your face or breaft, then fall backe with your fore foote and make a quicke change, and you thall hauc him atgreat aduantage, both for defenceand likewife to turne in the Butend of your Staffe vnto his face or breaft, and if youlift this is a fure defence for fuch an affaul, belecue it, for I know it, he that is perfect in thelow guard, may with a Staffe encounter againft

## 144 <br> The Schaole of Defence.

the Welch-hooke, Holbers, Partizan, or Gleaue, and I hold that a Staffe with a Pike to have oddes againf any fuch long weapon, being equally matched in length, for oddes inlength with any weapon is verie much aduantage, where I wifh if any doe appoint the ficld with any of thefe aforefaid weapons, it is net amiffe for the one of them to condition to bring a hatchet or fome other edged toole inte the field zo cut the longefl faffe, except you match thembefore hand.

## The Scholler.

I pray you let me here your reafon,for many thinke that the hooke or any edged weapon hath great ods againnt the Staffe.

Tbe Maffer.
Indeed without cuinning and skill, the Welchhooke, and thefe other weapons are more fearefull vnto the ignorant, but hee that is cunning in the falfe play and flippes, belonging vnto the Staffe may with a falfe thruft or with flipping his blow endanger any other, being weaponed with any other of thefe weapons aforefaid. For if you falfifie your thruft according to my direction in the falle play, that is, to proffer your thruft on the one fide, and then to put home the fecond determined thruft vito the other fide of his weapon, and then if your enemy haue a Hooke, Halbert, or Bill in defending the falfe, the head of his weapon will fo ouer-carric him by the reaion of the weight, that bee cannot command him nimbly backe againe, whereby to defend the falle, if your enemy bee armed with a Hooke, Holbertor Partizan or Gleaue, if hee charge you withablow, then Ilippehis blow, either by plucking

## The Schoole of Defence.

145
in of your Staffe, keeping of the point vpright vatill his blow be paft, and then you may anfwere hima. gaine, either with blow or thruf, for by llippinga blow, the weight of the head of any of the e afore. faid weapons will goc with fuch a fwing that it will turne his body in a manner round, I meane beyond the compaffe of defence.

Againe if you thinke that your face is our of hisis reach,he which chargeth you with a blow with any' of thefe aforefaid weapons, you may let fall the point: of your faffe, fo that his blow may paffe cleere ouer your ftaffe, and fo choppe home a thruf withall vider your enemies weapons, and then recouer the point of your Staffe vp haftily againc.

The Scholler.
What if I bee armed with any of thefe weapons aforefaid, what guard will your dired mee to frame my felfe vntor

The Mafter.
Iftill conmend the low guard for any long weit pon, whether it be Staffe, Pike,Hooke, Halber,, Partizan or Gleauc, my reafon is the point being fo high as your head, and the But-end fo low as your thigh, then is your weapon more readier to defend either blow or thruft, if you bee charged neuer fo fodainely, whereas if your point hang downe-wards toward the ground, you can neuer life him vp quick againe to defend your thruf, but a blow may be de.. fended eafily, for that a blow commeth more leafiurably, for why it is fercht with a greater compaffe, and 2 thruff goeth with farre more celerity then a blow,bcingput in cunningly, bur of thefe wcapons Shall follow more at large in the fecond booke.

## 46 The Schoole of Defence.

Now if thy enemie have oddes in lengeh in his Staffe, then let thy enemie make the firft affault, and vpoth defence of his affaule Aceppe forth with thy hindermoft foote, and fo thout thalt gaine fixe foote at the leaft in reach, but if your flates bee both ofone length, then vpon a charge or anfwere, increafc in oncly with thy fore foote, and fand faft with thy hinder foote, onely to plucke backe thy body againe, and if thou make the firft affault, and thy enemic defend it, and fo hee make a fodaine anfwere, then it wilbe hard to recouer vp thy faffe into his place, to defend it according to the low guard:but for a fodaine fhift the beft defence is bexring your vpper-hand ouer your body, and letting your point fall to the ground, according to the olde common order of the fight with the Pike, at fingle hand, I meane, hand to hand, or I may fay, man to man.

## The Scboller.

I pray you how would you direct mee to frame my guard with my faffe, if I were to encounter with my enemy, being armed with Sword and Dagger, or Rapicr and Dagger ?

The Mafler.
I hold the low guard beft, charging thy point direatly to the enemies breaft, and alwaies have a fpeciall regard, that thou poffer notablow, for fo hee may defend it double on the Back-fword and Dagger, and runve in vader the Staffe, likewife if thou proffer 2 inruft, let not thy Staffe loofe out of thy fore-hand, but hold him faft, that thereby thou maif bee the more readie to charge him againe, and againeif hee encroach in vpon thee, for if thou let

## The Schoole of Defence.

147
goe one hand, then may thy enemie very well defend the thruft of a ftaffe, according as I haue directed in the defcription of che Rapier and Digger, concer:ning the ftaffe, for with that one defence, being experienced in it, hou maift endanger any Staffe-man, that is not wary, and withall, well experienced in both thefe weapons, fo that thoutake thy opportunity vpon his affaule, Imean in anfwering him quick, fo foone as you haure defended his affault, whether it beblow or thrult.

Now if thy enemic doc frike at the point of thy Staffe, thinking to cut him off, then, as you fec his blow comming, let fall the point of your $S$ naffe, and prefently chop home a thruit, for in fo doing his blow will die oucr your Staffe, as by your practife you may be perfect in this flippe, for fo wee call it. I haue knowen a man witha Sword and Dagger hath cut off he end of a Pike-ftaffe, but I hold him an ig. norant and an vaskilfull man, that hath held the ftaffe, for though I hold, that a man skilfull at the Sword and Dagger may encounter againft a reafonable Staffe-mant, the fane opinion I hold fiil, and my reafons thou halt heare; if extreane need require, and vpon a neceffity, then the beft meancs is to be vied wherfore to befurnifhed with the beft means before hand at the time of neede, it may greatly ftead thee, for euery common man hath not knowledge of the beft rule, except hee have learnedit and practiled it by thofe which could hew it, for it commeth not by nature to none', yet euery ignorant dunce, when hee is perfwaded to goe lcarne skill, will fay, when I amput to my hift I will doe the beft I can: fo a man may, and yet without skill bee killed, although

Z 2
hee
$14^{8} \quad$ The Schosle of Defence. hee dochis beft, my opinionfurcher of this followeth.
Now the beft guard with a Sword and Dagger, or Rapier and Dagger againt a Staffe, is chis, put your Dagger on the in-fide of your Rapicr or Sword, and ioyne them both together, making your croffe with them within a foote or thereabouts of the hilt of your Rapier or Sword, and looking clecre with both your eyes vnder them, or betwixt both your weapons, and then if your enemy charge you with a blowac your head with his Staffe, beare themboth double againt the blow, and hauing defended it, turne your point and turne your knuckles inward of your right.hand, and fo to gocin amaine vpon him.
But ifhee clarge you with a thrult, then prefently let fall the point of your Rapier downe-ward, and force hind downe the more flronger, and more quicker with your Dagger, for to that end I doe appoint you to put your Dagger in the in-fide of your Rapier or Sword. Loe in this manner you may defend either blow or thruft of the Staffe, yet I munt needes confeffe, there is great oddes in the Staffe, if the Staffe-man bee verie skilfull, but otherwife the Rapier and Dagger hath the oddes being furnifhed with skill.

## Falfeplay to be vfed at the Staffe.

IfFyou both lie in the low gard, accordirg vnto my former diredtion, then proffer or faine athruft vnto your enemies face to the fairef fide of the ftaffe, Which to your feeming liedh moft open or vngarded,

The Schoole of Defence.
149
but the prefently in the fame motion let fall the point of your ltaffe fo low as his girdle-fted, fo that you may paffe cleare vader the But cnd of his ftaffic; for if with any part of his fuffe hetouch or intangle your faffe, then you can nor put in your falle fo directly as you Thould, or as you may, if you paffe cleare with your firf offer, then may you bring vp your point on the other fide of his ftaffe, and thrulting it home, you may hit him in the fhoulder or face, as you will your felfe, yea although he be verie skilfull or cumning, fo that you haue the true froke of it : as to make it plainer, then in offering your falfe, doc but fall the point of your ftaffe, Itriking it as it were ablowe, but let it fall two foote wide of that fide, which lieth open, and then bring it vp againe on the other fide, and put is in with a thrunt, for hec will carric his flaffe to dcfend your falfe, and fo by that meanes open the fide which lieth well guarded, and alwaies marke which part of your enemines bodie lieth open or moft difcouered vnto you, there proffer you your fained thruft, firf to the faireft, but hit him with your fecond or determined thruft to the contraric fide, and if you faine your thruft to the right fide, then thruf it home to the left, and if you fainc your thruft to the left fide, then pur it home co the riglit, and you may hit him in the breatt, fhoulder,or face, whether youlify your felfe, fo that you proffer your fained thrult three foote wide of his bodic, for if in offering your fained thruft, he hit your ftaff, it will fo intangle your point, that you cantot recouer hin to hit him with your determined thruft, for be fore you can cleare your point, he will be in his guard of defence againe.
The defence of this falfe thrufl.

T${ }^{*}$ His thruft is to be defended two waics, the firft is to bearehim againft your enimics proffer, but hatue a care that you doe not ouer-beare him, fo that if he mock you with his fained thrult on the one fide, you muft quicklie bring your flaffe backe againe into his place, to meer him when he commeth on the other fide of his ftaffe, and lo to defend it, keeping your point vpright : now the fecond defence is to beare your ftaffe oucr your bodie againft his proffer, as youdoe againft cuerie ordinaric thrunt; for you muft fuppofe that euerie thruft will come home, for the defender doth not know if his enimy doe proffer a thruft, whether it will come home or not: therefore ( 25 I faid) you muft beare your ftaffe againft euerie thruft, but you fhould beare your flaffe but a foote out of his place, whether it be againft blow or thruft: for if you ouer-carrie him, you can not recouer him to defend neither blowe nor thruit, if it be fallified vpon youl. Now if your enemie doe falfific vpon his firt proffer, carrie your ftaffe ouer your bodie, kee ping the point vpright againf his firft proffer : now vpon your offer of defence, at the firft you fee that you make no feifure vpon his faffe, then prefently you tnay perceiuc he doth but dallie with you, onlic to deceiue you with falfe $p l a y$, but then your proffer of defence, borh for the true and falfe play, muft be all done with one motion; for if you fee that with the filf proffer aboue he thorten his thruf, withour purting it home, then turne downe the point of your ataffe towards the ground, and meete himbelow, and
fo frike it away, butbefure that you defend alwaies beforchand, for to frike it backeward is no fure defence.

Yet to make this fore-hand defence plainer, why then it is thus meant, if your right hand be placed formot in holding your flaffe, then youmult defend both the true play, and the falle towards your left hand, but you mult not defend the firft proffer forward, and thenext, which may bee the falfe thrult, backe-ward, but both mult be defended towards your left fide : and fol likewife, if your left hand be formoft, then frame your defence towards your tight fide, as beforefaid.

Now if you cannot change hands, as (it may be) your enemie can, then keepe your guard vpon that hand which you can beft vie, and you thall finde that hee hath very little oddes after you haue practifed it a while; for you may offer or defend anic falfe play fo well as if you lay croffe handed one to the other.

## A falfe blowe.

NOw, if you would hit your enemic on the head with a blow, you mult proffcr a falfe blow at the head, as it you would ftrike him downe at the firt ; but when it is come halfe way, ftay your hand, or checke your blow before it meet with his ftaffe,for he will beare his ftaffe againft your blow, thinking to defend it ftrongly, before it come eo endanger him: but the checking of the firft blow wil be an occafion, that he wil ouer carry his ftaffe beyond the compaffe of true defence, fo that you may prefently come with afecondblowe, and frike is home ouer the point of
$152 \quad$ The Schoole of Defence.
his faffe, foby this determined blow, you may hit him on the head or face.

A Slippe at a Staffe.
F your enemic charge you with a blow, you lying in your guard according to the Picture, euen as you fee the blow comming, plucke in your flaffe, and withall, withdraw your head and bodic alitele backe, bearing your faffe, during the time while the blowa bath his paflage, clofe vpright by that fide of your face which your enemie chargeth you at, to defend that fide, if the blow doe reach home, but ifit doe paffe fhort, and goe cleare of you, withour touching your ftaffe, then will his ftaffe flic away with the greater fwinge, fo that it will paffe beyond compaffe of truc defence; but if is be a Welch-hooke, or anic other head weapon, then will the flipping of his blow be a more occafion of the ouer-carrying hisblow, by carrying his body round, fo that his blow being paft, you may prefently charge him with a blow at the head'; or thrult him in the backe, fo that it be done quicke before your enemie doe recouer his weapons into their place of defence.

## CAnotber fallofie.

Ou may profer a downe-right blow at your enemies head, fetching him with a grear compaffe, fo that it may feeme to your cnemic, that you meane to frike him downe, but as your blow is comming, draw backe your hand and changeyour blow into a thruft, and chopping home to his breaft or any other part of his body, that you will your felfe, for he will beare his Staffe to detend theblow, I meane

The Schorle of Defesce.
153
if hee be not very skilfull and cunning, the which if he doe, hee can but defend himfelfe, the which to doe he mult, be very wary when he beareth his faffe to defend then the blow, fo that he doe not ouer-carrie his ftaffe, and yet to bearc him a little and then to checke his Staffe, and be readic to turne downe the point to defend ele thruft, but he that is skilfull will, or hould chop out a thruft if his cuemic doe proffer ablow, and the thruf hould be pur our with one hand, and to lonfe the other, I meane with that hand which holdech the But-cnd of the Staffe, for fo thou Ghalt kecpe himout at the point of thy Staffe; for then the blow cannot endanger thee, except there be great oddes in the length of your ftaues, for commonly he that friketh, holdecth both his hands ypon his Saffe when hee deliuereth his blow, whereby there is three foote oddes in reach becwixt the friker and he which thrufteth.

```
Awother very deceining falfe thruf
    at the Staffc.
```

THy enemic lying in guard, proffer a fained thruft towards his foote, and then prefently raife thy point againe, and thruft if home to his face orbreft, for if hee turne downe the point of his Staffe to faue the falle thrun below, then if he werc neuer fo cunning, or neucr fo frong, yet can he not put yp his Staffe cime enough to defend his vpper part; and thercfore not to turne downe the point, if thy enemy doe proffer a thruft below is the more fureft, but if a thruft bee made below or aboue the knee, plucke vp thy legge, and cither thruft with him,

154
The Sckoole of Defence.
or heepe vp thy Staffe to delend thy vpper part, which are the killing places, rather then to turne him downe to defend thy legge or foote, wherein is not fo great danger of death as the body being hit, but at the Staffe all parts may be defcuded with skill.

## The guard for the Sword and Dagger, the which for fureneffe wee will call the Caflle-guard.



TMighr heare in this place diferibe many wardes or guards, at the Sword and Dagger, as the Lookeward, the Iron-ward, the Hanging-ward, the Croffe-ward, three high guards, the L.ow-guard, the Broad-ward. I will a little touch them all, or the moft yart of them with words, aldhough not with pictures,

The Schoole of Defence.
41) but in the next Inmprefion more at large, both with words and with pictures.

But now chielly ar this time I will proced only with this Cafle-guard, or Back-fword-guard according to the picture, for with the skilof this one guard thoumaift ately encounter aganit any man, which wethany other of the forefad guards, for this one guardbeing perfectly learned thoumain detend chy ielfe with great aduantage.

Now for the mancr of the framing thy felfeinto this guard, hou mutbeare ont the hilt of hy fword a foote from thy body, folow as the pocket of thy hofe, and right out from thy thigh, and thy Dagger our right at the armes end, and thy Dagger hilt enen with thy left checke, but barely looking ouce the vaper part of thy Dugger hile, and the points of both thy Sword and Dagger a little bowing cach to the other, and clole aboue, but open thy hilts fo broad below as thoumaift fee cleerely thy enemie betwixt them both, as at Rapier and Dagger before is diferibed,for bothat Rapier and Dagger, the guardsare both veric necre alike, but onely for the carriage of thy Rapier hand and foote, a little neerer thy body then at Sword and Dagger, the realons are, and Mall be made plaine vnto thee, as in reading thou thalt finde it, for both at Rapier and Dagger, and at Sword and Dagger, a man fhould bee prepared as well at the one, as the other to defend a thrult in fight fo well as ablow, and except the Rapier point beborne fome thing high, he is not ready to defend ablow, as by this guard thus bcing placed, as aforcfaid, thy Sword onely being borne out againft the blow, will defendall thy right-fide, boch thy head,

Al 2
and
and downe to thy knce, without moouing him, but if thy enemie doe charge thee with a blow at thy leftfide, whether he fluike to thy head or fide, then beare both thy Sword and thy Dagger ouer thy body, to. wards thy left. fide, and withall I doc aduife thee to hate a care to carry both the hilt and poine lenell, euen as thou lieft in thy guard, for if thou carry thy Eilt of thy Sword ouer thy body towards thy leftlide, and turne thy poine Back-ward, then bothat Sword and Dagger, and at Rapier and Dagger, thy head is endangered, for then thou haft bura fingle ward for thy head, I meane thy Dagger onely, and that is no fure defence for the head, if thy practife were neuer to much, but both being borne together, according vnto the Backe-fivord rule, thou flale defend both thy head and body downe to thy knce very frongly, and thy legge mutt faue himiclfe by a quick pulling vp of thy foote.
Thy weapons Likewife at Sword and Dagger,youmay fet your thys placed feete a foote diftance one right before the other, the thou fhale find other which I doe not allow of at Rapier and Dagthy body gar- ger, alfo you mult keepe the point of your Sword on
ded like apio foner betwixt the in-fide of your Dagger, and halfe a foote higher to keepers, then your Dagger point, efpecially if you play at the thy fivodto blunt, but in fight as at Rapier and Dagger, then you
guard thy right-fide, and mult fo exercife your foote, that you may pluck him thy dagger the vp nimbly againft eucry blow that commeth, otherwife if you doe keepe them fo neareas my direction is at Rapier and Dagger, then is your foote fure without plucking of him vp ; beare your head vpright, bowing rather to the right-fholder, then to the left, but not forward at any weapon, but your body bowing forward, and keepe your points clofe together, poine (asbefore-faide) and the hilt of your Dagger from your lefe checke, right at the armes end, with. our bowing of your clbow ioyne, and your Dagger point floping, or bowing towards your right fide, looking with both your cics betwixt your weapons, looke not oucr your weapons with neither of your cies at anichand; your weapons placed, and your bodic fetled (as aforefaide) then thall you finde no part of yourbodie difcoucred or vnguarded, but onlie your leff fide from the Dagner anme downewards, and that youmuft haue a care vnto, and defend it in this manner.

If your enemic charge you with ablow, defend your felfe, by bearing the edge of your Sword againt it, and alittle beare your Dagger againit the blow alfo, onely to gine allowance for the yeclding of your Dagger, if the blow thould chaunce to light at your head, for your guard timply of himfelfe doth defend bur a weakeblow; if you ftand tocke ftill at yourgard as a wrift blow a droppe or a mite, which commeth with fmall force, though they come with more fpeed then any orher blow, your guard will defend without mooning your weapons. Now other blowes which thall come with greater force, confume more time, and doeferch a greater compaffe, infomuch as their force is greater, you fhal perceiue them the plainer, to which fide theblow will come, and if to the right fide, then fwarue both wepons againft the blow, and if to the left fide, dolikewife (kecping vpethe point of your fword, for that will defend from the head downe to the knee, and the knee and leg which you ftand formoft vpou, you muft defend by plucking
them

The Schoole of Difence.
them rp, and your fword will defend the hindmont lege, if the blow fhould chance to reach fo farre, by taking it neere the hilt, vpon the edge of your backefivord, as aforefaid, for if you put downe the point of your fword to fane your legge, then you leauc your head and your face vinguarded, for when you fee your enemic charge you with ablorv, there is no rule to be fhewen to know where the blow will light, vintill it doelight : but this aflure your felfe, the blow mult hanc a lighting place; for when the fivord is vp, where he will fall there is no rule to be fhewen, for when the blow is charged, it commeth fo fwitt and lighteth where the ftriker thinketh good; wherefore arme your felfe to defend enerie place, whether it conmeth aboue or below; for if you turne downe the point of your fword before-hand, thinking the blow will light at your legge, for fo you muft doc if you will defend lim with yourfivord, otherwife you cannot be downe quicke enough, for the blow will paffe more fpeedier then the turning of a hand; wherefore I wifly you to fauc your legge by plucking of him vp, and open not your head, in hope to faue your legge, and fo fane neither of them, for the head is the principall place that your enemic will frike at ; therefore keepe your points alwaies vpright, and in their place, according to my direction following the firf Picture; and likewife as hecre I haue defcribed it, for it is not enough toknow the place of your weapous, but alwaies to continuc them in eheir place, except it be at the verie inftant time of your defence, and offence: but if you make play to offend your enemie, reconer your weapons into your guard fpeedily againe whether you hit or miffe : Now in friking thy blow, let not thy blowe, but winde him vp prefently into his place againe; alvaies keepe the points clofe, and defend the blow double:for fo doing the poine of your fivord will be a great ftrengehening vnto your Dagger, for hee that doth truft to defenda blow with the Digget onely, may be decciued, if his cunning were nener fo good; for if the blow thould light nere the point of your Dagger, by reafon of the tharpeneffe and weakeneffe of the lagger, it may glide ower, and hit him that is skilfull, if his cmming were nemer fo good: likewife, the blow may hie him vnder the Diggerarme, which trufteth to the Dagger, excepthee vfe the defence of his backe-fword, for which both together a weake man, yea, a boy may defend a ftrong man with both, for no man is able to charge ablow with one hand, it his force were neucr fogreat, but one that is verie weake and skilful of the Back. fword, may defend himfelfe double (as aforefaid) for he that chargeth with one hand, a verie wretch is able to defond with both, hauing skill and practife inall fathions, for when one cannot his thee, yet another whole fanion thou art valequainted with may hit thee, but being experienced in many weapons, and in many guards, and practifug with many men, then if thou have an occafion to anfwer any one which thou neuer fawe f before, thon wilt prefently call to minde, that hee can but frike aud thruft: therefore being prepared before hand, then fo foone as thou feeft his gard andcharge, thouknoweit thy defence.

Now (as I hanc !aid before) you mult be carefull in your defence, and fo foone as you come within the reach of your enemie, prepare your felfe into
yous
your guard, to defend eueric part both from blowe and thruft, defending the blow with the Backe-fword fo low as your knee, and the point helping to ftrengthen the point of your Dagger : then if your enemie charge you with a blowe, you munt nor prepare to ftrike with him; for fo youmay be hurt, and then fay afterward, I thought hee would haue frucke at mino head, and fo neuer reckon vponyour fide nor your legge, or if you thould thiske he would haue frucke at your legge, and fo ncuer regard your head : But I fay you muft not deale vpon thought, but vpon a fure guard, and it is not fufficient, to know your guard of defence, but you muft keepe him, for if your enemie haue once bit you for want of keeping your guard, it will be too late for you to remember your defence afterwards, therefore looke to it afore the blow doth light; or if you fight at Rapier and Dagger, you mult lonke for both blow and thrunt, for your enemic may frike with his Rapier, and hit you if you do not looke for a blow, and when you are hit, it is too late to fay, I thought he would not haue ftrucke with his Rapier. Againe, at Sword and Dagger, it may be your enemie will thrult, and you mult not fay, I thoughe he would not thruft, for euerie one will, in a quarrell, do what his affection leadeth himbeft voto, except healter his affection by practife.

Heere followeth the chief of blowes at Sword and
Dagger, and the maner bow to
performe them.

N
Ow for thy beft aduantage, in as plaine maner, as by words I can exprefle them, amongh many other blowes, wee will hecre oblerue thefe three:

The Schoole of Defence.
161
three : the firt, a wrift blow, a halfe blow, and a quarterblow; euerie one of thefe nuftbee vied in their time and place (as this) fometimes with a wrif blow, thou maieft fpeed thine enemic when thou canft not hit him with a halfe blow, nor wich a quarter blow, becaule there is in the deliuering of either of the two laft blowes, more time feent, for eueric blow exceedeth cach other, in force, and in quickeneffe; this wriftblow will hit thine encmic cicher head or face, if his points lie anie thing open, or on either fide of his head, ifle doe lookeoucr cither of his wcapons: for alchough he doe fee it comming nener fo plaine yet he cannot preuent it, if hee had Argus eies, if his weapons be butaninch coo lowe, but if your enemie doe lie more epen, then you may charge him with a halfe blow, or a full quarterblow. but the quarterblow ferueth beft for the legge. If thine enemie doe incroach or gather in vpon thee, then ftrike downe to his legge and beare vp thy Dagger ouer thy head, with the point fomething floping towards thy right thoulder, for for thy Dagger will fauc thy head, and the poinr of thy Sword will hichim on the legge in his owne comming, and the vpper part of thy Sword will defend thine owne legge, ifhe charge thee in thine owne affault; but fo foonc as thou haft ftricken thy blow, recouer thy guard haftily againe: the quarter blowe doth fetcha compaffe about the head, that although hee come frong, it is nor fo quick as many other: : $n$ ow there is a wafhing blowe, which the vnskilfull do vfe much, and with that blow thou maief hit thy enemic vnder the Dagger arme, if he be not skilfull, with his Back-fword, for there is no other defenceforit, but the Backe-fword opelie.

Bb
Then

The Schoole of Defence.
Then there is a whirling blow, \& that is after thou haft weft thy Sword, or flourifhed him ourer thine head ewice or thrice, thou maycen deliuer thy blowe, either to the head or legge, or to what place thou feef moft for thine aduantage, for it is fluch an vncertaine blow, that he mufbe a good player that defendeth ir.
Alfo there is a backe blow which is to be made two waies, the one is a plaine Dunftable way, that is, to fetch thy fiword frō off thy left fhoulder, \& fo to ftrike it to the right fide ofthy enimies head, or to the outfide of his right leg, but the cunningelf way is to bow thy Sword-elbow ioynt, \& with thy knuckles ypward, and thy Sword hils fo high as your eare, and then by turning of your foord hand wrilt, bend, or proffer the point of thy Sword with a blow towards your enemies Dagger eare, but prefently turning your wrift, bringing the middef of your Sword clofe ouer the crowne of thy head, and with a compaffeblow, friking it home to his Sword eare, or to the ourfide of his legge : I cannot with wordes make this blowe fo plaine as I would, for I would gladly the ignorant Chould vndertand it, for of all the blowes of true play, this is the beft, for you may likewife faine it vnto the out-fide of your enemies head, and frike it home to the other, or vnto his fide.

Here followeth the falfeplay at Sword and Dagger.

IFFyour enemie be in this guard, as 1 haue heere de(cribed by falle play, you may caufe him to open his guard, but ifhe lie vpon any other guard, then you neede not to fallifie, for you may hit him with true play.

The scboole of Defense.
163
If you would hit your enemic on the right fide of the head, then frike a blow to his foote, but frike it fomewhat fhorr, then prefently bring it with a back blow to his righe care, the which wil be vnguarded, by reafon of the carrying his Sword to fauc his leff fide, if hee be not the betrer grounded with experience.

And if you would hit him on the fide of his head, then thruft a full thruftat his bellie, turning your knuckles inward, and hee will put downe his Dag. ger to defend it, but then, fo foone as you hane offered your thruf, prefently bring vp your Sword clofe vp by the out-fide of his Dagger elbow, and with a wrift blow frike him on the eare or head, keeping your knunckles inward, ill the blow be deliuered: with this blow you may hit a good Player, but indeed it is not 2 very frong blow. Now to hit thy enemie in the foote, is to thruft wo or three thrufts fhore at his face, and then fall it downe to the legge or the foote with a blow, for the feare of the daungering of his faee with a thruft will make him forget his legge.

Another way is to frike a backe blow ftrongly to his Sword care, and prefently fall it downe to his foote, for hee fecing it come to his head, not one in twentic, but will wincke, and before he open his cies againe, you may hit him vpon his foote or legge.

But the chicfeft blow of all for the legge, is to lift vp the heele of your Sword hand higher then your head, and tip in the point ourer your enemies $S$ word, as thongh you would hit him in the right cie,but prefently bring downe your Sword with a full blowe to the in-fide of his legge, for this blow in offering a-

## 164

The Schoole of Dofence.
lofe, will fure make him winke and deceiue a skilfull man, and if in the lifing vp of your Sword, you fay, Beware your foote, it will lerue to him, that you go about to hit him on the head, fo hee will lift vp his weapons to faue the head, but this blow being cunningly deliuered commeth downe to the legge, with fuch celeritie and violence, that hee cannot preuent it, except hee hath beene vfed to it with much praaife, but is feldome miffech if it be cunningly deliuered.
Yet there is another deceitfull blow for the legge or foote, that is, to ftrike a backe blow to the fivord eare (as before-faide) ftepping out your foote with your blow alititle, and fee that your blow reach but to his Sword, it is enough, but hatily plucke backe your foote, and your Sword in their place, and prouide to charge him witha blow to the foote, as hee conmeth in to anfwer your firft blow : now in friking at his legge, be alittle before hand; for as he maketh 2 motion of lifting vp his Sword to charge you, fep in with the fame motion, and in falling your point to his legge, you faue your owne legge, if he do ftrike ar your legge, then the Dagger muffat fuch a time, defend your head fingle, which you may very well doe, if youbeare him alitete the higher, bur withall, curne the Dagger point downe sowardes the right fhoulder.

Alfo, you may deceiue fome, with cafting your eies downe, and looking to his foote, and prefently ftrike it home to his head, for with your eie you may deceiue him which is not perfeat in this deceit,

Certaine

## Certaine reafons why thou maift not frike with <br> thy weapon in fighr.

THe firf danger is defcribed following the firts picture in this booke, and in this manner, the defendor is to take the blow double, or on the Back-fword onely, and then prefently to charge him againe with the poine, with the which the defender may hit the friker in the face, breft or thigh, as he will himelfe, the like may be done with a faffe, firft, defend the blow, and anfwere quick wich a thruft.
The next danger, if it be with a fword, is this, thou maif breake or bow him, or he may flip out of the hilts, any of thefe dangers may happen at the very firt blow that thou frikef, and if it be a ftaffe it may likewife be broken, or the pike may fie out, and then thou art not affured whether thy enemy vpon fuch anoccafion will take the aduantage vpon thee, if fuch a chance doe fall our, therefore beware of friking.
An other hazard by friking is vnto the ftriker, if his enemie the defender doe but llippe his blow by a litele with-drawing offhis body backe, 'cuch as hee feeth the blow come, and fo I fay by a litele withdrawing the body, and allo by plucking in his weapons, he that friketh the blow will oucr-fway his body beyond the compaffe of true defence, and fo the blow being paft, charge him prefently with athruft, for he that Ariketh his blow will carrie his body in a manner round, fo that the blow be not defended, but let flippe, as aforefaid, and then you may hit him in the backe, either withablow or thruft, if youtake

## 166 The Schoole of Defence.

your opportunity in making a quicke anlwere, as more at large of this flight I haue thewen in the falle play at each weapon, alfo diuers reafons heere and there in this booke, concerning the difaduantage of ablow.

The Cuthors opinion concerning the odaes betwixt aleft-banded man, and a right-banded

## mas.

A
Left-handed man being skilfull hath oddes againtt a right-handed man being skilfull likewife, one reafon is a left-hand man is alwaies vfed vnto 2 right-handed man, buta right-handed man doth feldome meete with a left-handed man, for in Schooles or fich places, where play is, a man may play with forty men, and not mecte with too lefthanded men, except it be a great chance,another reafon is, when a tight-handed man doth offer or make play,firlt vnto the left-handed man, then doth he endanger the right-fide of his head, although hee doe beare his Dagger to the right-fide, yctit doth not defend fo ftrong, nor fo fure, as it doth the left, yet vato one that is well inftructed with the true skill of the Back-fword, and other rules which belongeth for the beft aduantage againft a left-hand, it wilbe the leffedangerous or troublefome vnto fuch a one, for he wil prefently cal himfelfe to minde, when be feeth that he is to encounter againft a left-handed man, he will frame himfelfe prefently to the beft guard of defence for that purpole which is the Back-fword, for that is the chicfeft weapon to be grounded in, not onely a leff-hatid, but many other weapons haue the the rules of the Back-fivord, euen as the helme guids the hlip, now if thon offer play, firft to the left handed man, thou muft be carefull and heedy to recoucr vp thy Back fword againe, prefently into his place fo quicke as thou cant, or elfe turac ouer your Dagger to the right-eare, thefe very rules likewife muft a left-handed man obferuc to encounter againf a right-handed man, yet furthermore I haue knowne fome right-handed men, that were very skilfull, and veric ready if ic lad becne to entounter againft a right-lianded man, but by no meanes would not deale with a left-handed man, and this was for want of a good teacher: for the reacher Chould inftruct cuery one which they doe teach by playing with his left-hand with them, for it is an eafie matter to have the oddes of both the hands a like with litele practife, and then a man may vee which he will, as if a righthanded man were to encounter againfe aleft, and can vfe both hands alike, then if he play with his leffhand againlt one that is left-handed by nature, it will feeme more croffe, and more dangerous vnoo hin then a lef- handed man vnto a right, the reafon is that two lef-handed men feldome mecre together, now to end with this one fpeech according to the vulgar fort, that is an ignoraus and a fimple man of skill by great and often toyling and moyling of his body, in practifing naturall play, I meane onely that which commeth into his head, and being right-handed meereth with another right-handed man that is very skilfull, and hath very artuficiall play, and yer the vnskilfull hath plied fo faft and let his blowes fall fo thicke, that the skilfull man had enougha doc to de-
fend himfelfe, fo that the vnskilfull hath made fuch good Thift, and defended himfelfe contrary vnto any mans expectation, that was fo experience and faw it, but there is not one of the common flreete plaiers in a hundred that can doe the like as I hauc faid before, but not one in fiue hundred of them, that can vpon the point of a weapon hurt or wrong one chat is skilfull or cunning, for many of thefe freere players are fo vfed to bangs, that they care not for a blow with a blunt cudgell, but moft of them are fearefull to deale againf a tharp weapon, but now to conclude this, with that which touchech this Chapter, concerning thefe ftrecte players, which haue fo well hifred with a cunning player right-haided, the fame I fay meeting with a left-handed man was not able todefend in a manner one blow in twenty, except it were in falling backe from him, and the cunningeft man that is, cannor hit the viskilfulleft man that is, if the vnskilfull man do continually keepe him out of his reach or diffance, for he which hath courage without skill, alchough well prepared,yet wants his armes to fight, but of this it is fufficiently \{poken of in the Treatif, in the former part of the Booke.

> Abriffe of my principall points which Inould hase thee kerpe in contimuall remesebrance.

NTOw to fumme vp all the chiefeft leffons into one fumme, and for order fake wee will make foure deuifions of them.
The firt is to remember to frame thy felfe into thy guard, before thou come within thy enemics

## The Schaole of Defense.

diftance, and fo to approach in guarded.
Secondly, remember if thy enemy charge thee ${ }_{\text {Be confant }}$ with a blow, at what weapon foener, yet anfwere him and feady in with 2 thrult prefently, afier you haue borne the ${ }^{n}$ good guard blow double, according to my diredtion, following make play e the firft picture, 'but if thy enemy charge thee with cepethy enea thruft, then anfwere him with a thruft at the neare? my doc coplace, which lieth moft viguarded, whether it be his these. knee or in his making play, your anfwere may be ro his right arme, fhoulder or face, all which you thall finde viguarded in time of his profer, now if he haue a clofe hilted dagger, yer with a falfe thruft thou maif hit him in the $\mathrm{D}_{\text {agger-arme if he fighe not very }}$ warily, or elfe in the Dagger-hand if hee hauenota clofe hilted dagger.
Thirdly, let not'fury ouer-come thy wits, for in a made fury skill is forgotten, for he which is in drinke or ouer hally, fich 2 one in his anger doth neither thinke vpon the end of killing, nor feare to bee killed.
Now the fourch and laft which fhould haue beene the firf, is to remember tokecpe a truediftance, and if thy enemie doe gather and incroach in vpon thee, charge him with a thruft, although thou put it not home, for a thruft will feare him, and he which is in his right wits will be loath to come within the reach, ordanger; of thy weapon, but if thou fuffer thy enemy to come within thy diftance, then if thou haddeft all the guards in the world, and yetfand fill without making play, hee willhit thee in fpight of thy tecth, wherefore be doing with him betimes; and ne wilh recreate and fall away from thee for his owne carce, Loe,this I wrote, becaufe I would not hauc thee in

C c
an

The Schoole of Defence.
an error when thou thouldent haue occafion to ve thy weapon, as the befl defence, for a hot is to ftand out of the reach of him, euen fo the beft defence of thy bodie from hurts and skars is to be proceeded before hand with skill and cunning, and to remember it when thou haft occalion to vicit, but if thou want skill, then keepe out of thy enemies reach;now if thou canf not remember thefe foure chiefe points before faid, yet beare in minde thefe two, the firt is to defend the blow double, keeping boththe points vpward, and fecondly, remember that if thy eneiny doe gather in!vpon thee, thruft to his knee, or whether hee doe gather in or no, yet thruft to his knee or thigh, but at any hand feps not fo farre forth with your thruft whereby to endanger your face, but if you doe fteppe fo farre forth as you can, al. waies hauc a care to defend wish your dagger, bue if your enemy do fer foorth one foote aboue halfe e foote diftance from the other, then may you hit him in the thigh or knee, and hee cannot reach you fo that you doe not aduenture further with your thruf, then where his knee did ftand when you doe offer, for it may be hee will plucke him away, thereby to Gauc him, but that is no defence for a thruft ifit be put in quicke: a man may defend the legge from a blow, by drawing him back, butnotfrom a thruft, but to keepe thy feete in the right place according to my direction following the firft picture, and then you are defended, and teady to offend alfo.

## The c-1utbors opinion concerning the short <br> Swordand Dagger.

TN defcribing of this weapon I fhall account the time ill fpent, yet becaule Shore fwords are in vfe and worne of many that would leaue them off if that they knew what an idle weapon it werc, Imeane to encounter againft a long Sword and Dagger, or a long Rapier and Dagger,fof fmall is their Ludgement, butoncly this, many of them will fay it is a better weapon then any of the two forefaid weapons are, but in my minde they may afwell fay that chalke is cheefc becaufe they are both white, for I haue had much triall and great practife with the fhort fword, yercould I neuer find, nor neuer wilbe perfivaded but that a Rapier foure foote long or longer, hath fuch great oddes, that I neuer meane to arme my felfe with a thort againf it; for in my minde and by experience I fpeake it, there is finall skill to be learned with the thore fivord to encounter as aforefaid, but oncly refolution and courage.
He that is valiant and venturous, rumeth in, breaking diflance, if hee efcape both in his going in, and in his comming our vnhurt; from a man skilful, in my minde it is as a man would fay chance.medly, for if I hauc the Rapier and Dagger, I will hazard both games, and fer againt any man that holdeth the fhort fword to be a better weapon, although that Ceorge - iller hath moft highly cormended the fhort fword \& dagger, yet one Swallow maketh not a Summer, nor two Woodcocks a Winter, if a thoufand more were of his opinion, yet without all doubt chere is a great

Cc 2
dealo

The Schoole of Defence.
deale more danger then at Rapier and Dagger,for he that fighteth with a fhort fword mult aduenture in pell mell without feare or wit, but I haue feldome heard or feene any fight with Chort fword and dagger, alehough they be each weaponed alike, but one or both commeth home moft grieuous wounded: my realon is the diftance is fo narrow that a man can hardly oblerue it, except they haue beene both practicioners a long time before hand, for if a man practife continually long fword or long Rapier, yet ypon fuch a Cballenge goeth into the field with 2 fhorr fword, then the daunger is greatelt of all : aske Augufion Badger, who fpeaketh highly in praife and commendation of the hort fword, for hee hath tried that weapon in the field fo often, and made as many all fraics as any man that cuer I heard of or knew fince my time, yet hee will fay that he neuer fought in all his life : but was fore and dangerounly hure.

I hauc knowen fome befides my felfe, thathaue foughtwith Rapier and Dagger twenty times, and bane neuer had one droppe of bloud drawne, and yet were accounted men of fufficient vallour and refolution, thofe which weare fhort fwords depend onely vpon the taking of their enemies poine, which is not to bee done if they meete with one that is skilfull : Ihaue heard many fay in talking familiarly concerning this weapon, if I take the point of your long Rapier, then you are gone, but that is not to be done if thou meete with one that is skilfull except thou cant take thy enemies point in thy teeth, otherwife thou cant neuer make feafure vpon his point, if hee bee skilfull as aforcfaid, but

The Schoole of Defence.
indeed it is an eafie matter for a man skilfull to take the point of one that is altogether viskilfill; but rather not anfwer thy enemy vatill thou be better weaponed, there are all thefe excules te bec framed as in the renth Chapter of the ereatife, there you may find excufes fit for fuch as weare fhort Swords, if thou like them not I refer to thy owne wit to frame an cxcule; for fome fhift lie mut hate that wearech fuch an idle weapon, for in a word a fhort fword and dagger to encounter againft a skilfull man with rapier and dagger, $I$ hold it a little better then a tobacco-pipe, or a foxe tayle, butyet a fhore fword is good to encounter againft a fhort fword.
Alfo a fhort fword is good to encounter againft a naked man, I mean a man vnweaponed, and it is good to ferue in the wars on horfe-backe or on foote, yet a Rapier will doe as good feruice in the wars as a fhort fword, if a skilfull man haue him in hand: we haue diuers examples of thofe which come out of the ficld fore wounded, and they will hay it was becaufe their enemyhad a handfull or a foot ods in length of weapon vpon them; wherefore I fay one inch is great ods and enough to klla man, if they both haue skill alike, and doe obferue a true diltance : yetnow you that are as it were married vnto thort fwords, becaufe fome will not giue their bable for the Tower of London; although another doe not effeeme it worth two-pence, yet a man thall as well driue a dog from a peece of bread, as wreft many from that foolim kind of weapon; againe a fivord whether he be long or fhort, is morewearifome and moretroublefome then a rapier, for a fword will weare out your hofe and three paire of hangers, before a Rapier doe weare out one paire; Cc 3:

The Schoole of Defence.
but fome doe weare their fhort fwords about their neckes in a Aring, fo that if they Chould hane occalion to vfe him, he cannot fo ready draw out his fword vpon a fuddaine, as he which wearech him vponhis thigh, but of this fahion of wearing their fwords, I wil not feake mush, becaufe I fee it is almoft left off, for a man maybuy a girdle and hangers for ten groats, which will ferue for thy Rapier two or three yeere, and a fearfe will coft ten fhillings, and yet be worne out in a formight; but I will fay no more becaufe many give it ouer for their owne eafe, I holde a thort fivord for to encounter againtt a rapier very litelebetrer then a tobacco pipe as aforefaid, and Ic as I began I conclude, yetbehold a litcle helpe for him that wearethit.
Cguard for the floort froord and dagger to encounter
againft the long Rapier and Dagger, or elfe the
long /mord and Dagger.


Keepe

KEcpe your fivord hilt fo high as your head or higher at the point, hanging ilope-wayes downwards a little wide of your leff fide, looking vnderyour fword arme with both your eyes, and withall put out your fword hand as far from your body as you can, I meanc towards your cnemy, and your dagger downe by your fide, as if you meant not to vechim at all,according to this picture. Lying in this guard your body will feeme to your enemy to be very open, infomuch that he will make no reckoning but to hit you fure with a thrult; the which you muff defend by breaking it towards your right fide, and with the fame motion ftep in with your lcft lcg , which I will call your hinmoftleg, for fo he fhould be vntill you haue mado feifure of your encmies weapon : but fo foone as feifore is made confume no time in giuing of him leifure to fall backe againe, whereby to reconcer his pointagaine, but forthwith anfwer him as aforefaid, for hauing brought his long Rapier or fword point to paffe clecre on the right fide of your body, Imeane vider your right arme, then ftep in clofe with your left foot as aforclaid, and make a croffe with your dagger ypon his weapon by clapping in wich your dagger vpon the middeft of thy cneniics long rapier or Sword, keepe your Dagger point vpright when yougoe in, and fo foone as you haue dilchargod the affize of your fword, you may prefently turne vp the point of your hort fword and thruf, or elfc you may giue a ftroke with him whether you will, and to what part of his body you lift, and then fall away hatily againe into your guard and diftance;know this, that by ftepping in with your hindmonf foore, doth gaine more aduan-
rage in ground then you want in length of weapon.
But at any hand fuffer your enemy to make the firft affault, becaufe hee hath the aduantage in length of weapon, and it thy enemy do charge thee with a blow you may defend it vpon this hanging guard, butto turne vp the point of your fword according to backefword rule, \& if your encmy clarge you with a thruf, you may after feifure made vpon his weapon with your fword as before directed; you may prefently fo foone as you are in with the hindmoft foot turne vp your fword point and thruft, this offence you may performe without the helpe of your dagger, but yet hauc a care to prepare your dagger in a readineffe, left in your going in, your enemy doe alfo come in with you, and alchough you hauc his long weapon at your command without any danger, yet may he ftab you with his dagger, except your dagger be in a readineffe to defend;fora thruft of a dagger is as eafie to be defended with a dagger, as any thrult is of anyo. ther weapon, bue if the defender bee onercome with fury, and fo thruft both together, then they both are endangered, but to defcend is better then to offend, and to be offended againe vpright according to the rule of the backe-fword, it your defence be vpon the hangingguard, then clapping vp your dagger and ioyne with himas it were in commiffion with your fword, and fo defend the blow vpon both together, now if your enemy will not charge nor make any affaule vpon you, then I aduife you not to gather nor encroach vpon him, except you were equally matched in weapon, for you mult obferue the diftance which belongeth to your enemies long weapon for this guard or any other. For this guard is but for 2
fuddaine
fuddaine fhift for thofe that weare fhort fwords, for keeping a large diftance a man with fmall skill may defend himfelfe from a longer weapon, fo he feek not hattily by gathering in to offend the other; for the beft defence of a fhot is to fland out of his watch; fo the beft defence for a thort fword man is to obferue diftance as before faid, for he fhall find himfelfe work enough to defend himelfe, for not one in twenty whieh fighteth with the fhore fword once will defire to go into the field withfucla a weapon againe.

New thofe that do encounter together with thore fword, to fhort fword, I wifh them to frame their guard according to my former ditection at the long fword and dagger.

Ifthou frame thy guard according to my former directionas it is here pictured, then if your enemy deth falfifie a thruft, and you making account to defeod it with your Sword, as before, and in uturning in your left fide hee double a thruft, he may endanger you greatly; wherefore it behooueth thee not to o. uercarrie thy Sword vpon the firt offer, but that you may recouer him backe into the place againe, fo that if you have a care if you miffe the Etriking by of his Sword on the one fide becaufe of his falfifie, you fhal meete with him on the other, and fo defend your felf although you cannot anfwer whereby to offend him by reafon of his fallific, for vpon a falfe if you make anlwer, it will be very dangerous to both.
Mafter. Now my louing fcholler I haue alreadie defcribed the rules of fixe weapons, which I promife to intruct thee in, but yet I haue ftumbled by cliance vpon another weapon, which is as neceffarie as anie of the reft; nay more, for without thoube perfeet in

Dd
the
${ }_{17}{ }^{8} \quad$ Tbe Scboole of Defence.
the skill of this weapon, all the reft will rather bee hurfull vito thee then doe thee good.

Scholler. I praie you, what weapon is that?
Maffer. Marric it is a faire tongue.
Scholler. Why doe you call the tongue a weapon?
Maffer. Becaute at manic cimes, and for manie purpofes, it is the fitecfe weapon, and the moft fureff for a mans owne defence, for the tongue at fometimes runneth foac randome, that for want of a bridle like a yong colt ouerthroweth the rider, although it be but $a$ litele thing and feldome feene, yet it is ofton heard to the vtter confufion of manic a man, for the tongue is fuch a weapon without it bee gouerned, it will cue worfe then anie fivord; a nettle is a bad weed in 2 garden, bur the tongue will ting worfe then a nettle, and pricke deeper then a thorne, likewife manie men are taken by the tongues as birds are taken by the feete, therefore a faire tonguc or a tongue gouerned well, will better keep and defend thy bodie from prifon, if thouat anie time be committed by the Magiftrates when thy Sword will hinder thee if thou truft vnto thy manhood.

Scholler. IfI fight with no other weapon, but with a faire tongue, the world will condemne mee', and terne me for a coward.
Baiffer. A faire tongue is more neceffaric for a valorous man, then a good weapon is for a coward, as thou halt heare : for with a faire tongue thou maiefl paffe through watch and ward, if thou do chance to trauell in the night by oceafion, and thou bee late from thy lodging, at fuch a time this is a principall weapon, and fhall more preuaile then thy Sword, or any other weapon whatfocuer.

Againe,

Againe, a faire tongue is an excellent weapon, if thou hap in a drunken company, and there fall to quarrelling; in fucha cafe, ifthou draw thy weapon, it were as if a man mould quench a great fire with a bundle of flaxe, for at fuch a time, and in fuch a company, if a mandraw his weapon, he may as foone be killed as kill, for drunkards and madde men are allalike during time of the drinke.

Alfo a faire tongue is a principall weapon to carry with thee, if thou chance to trauell into anic ftrange countrey : for if an iniurie be offered in a place where thou art not acquainted or vnknowne, thou maieft be oppreffed with more then one, for birds of a feather will holde together; and many will hold on the bigger fide, for where the hedge is loweft, the bealts will foonef get ouer, but in fuch a cafe be well armed with patience for thy Buckler, and a fairc tongue for thy Sword, and thy hand readie on thy hatete to doe reuerence to cueric vaffall, alchough thoube a Gentleman, for the richeft man that is, and the frongeft man that euer was, did, and mut pocket vpan iniurie in his owne Countrey, much more it is leffe difgrace to thee to put vp an iniurie in a ftrange place, if an occafion be offered, then rather bettirre thy felfe with a faire tongue, then with thy fword; for in fuch a cafe thy fword will aunile chee nothing at all.

Scholer. All this while with this weapon you have not taught mehow I fhould defend ny point.
Maiffer. Now I will tell thee, with a faire tongue, thou mayeft faue thy money many times, by promifing much, 'and performing little, efpecially where little is deferued, for thole which deferue little, a faire promife will paffe, in a manner, as currant as thy noo-

D d
ney:

The Schoole of Defesce.
ney:I haue knowne many Mufitions many tim es paid with faire words : and now that it commeth intoiny minde I will tell thee a tale (as I haue heard it reported:) How King Dyomifus rewarded a crew of Mufitions which came to him with excellent Muficke, and after the Muficke was ended, come againe to ine to morrow faid the King, and I will giue you a thoufand talents; the which promife founded to 2 fweete and pleafant tune in the Mufitions eares: But in the morning they came, expeAing the Kings reward,according to his promife: But the King looked frangely vpon them, and asked them what they would haue, And it like your Highaeffe, faid one of the chiefeft of them, we are come for your gracious reward which you promifed vs. What was that, faid the King ? A thoufand talents faid the Fidler. Why faid the King Is not that out of thy head yet? thy Muficke is quite out of mine, thou pleafedin my eares with thy mufick for the prefent, \& I likewife filled thy cares with a plefant found of fo much mony : to our matter againe.

A faire tongue, and kinde hehauior winneth fanor, both with God and men, whereas thofe which cannot gouerne their tongues are feldome at quiet: but always punifhed or vexed with the Law, and troubles in the Lawe confame much money, which with difcretion mightbe kept by gouernement of the tongue.

Now by the hieway, if a carcleffe roifter in his own name require thee to itaud, and by vertue of his owne warrant dothrequire thy purfe; in fuch a danger, and in fuch a cafe betake thy felfe to thy weapon, rather then truf to chy tong:for to fpeake faire vnto fome in fuch a cafe will auaile thee nothing ar all, butyet for all that a faire tongue is as a precious balme to beare
about
aboue thee although it bee not fufficient to heale wounds, yet it may be a prefernatiue to keepe thee withour hurts : all the comfort thou cant hauc of thy deareff friends is but little elfe thé bodily fuftenance, nay if thy kind and louing wife which is or thould be thy greant comfort in this life vader God, if ine I fay do all that euer thee can to pleafure thee, yct thou maif hap to find in this booke, if thou reade it ouer, one leffon or other which may fread thee, or do thee more pleafure then all thy other friends: for here are many things written by me, that peraduenture thou maiff feeke after a great whilc, and yet not finde them elfe-where, and fo farewell.

Scboller. Yee flay I pray you, refolue me in two queftions more afore you goe.
Mafier. What are they
Scholler. Firft I would know what oddes a tall man of fature hath againft a litele mans ftature, and the oddes that a frong man hath againf a weake man

Maffer. Indeed thefe are queftions which I did meane to write of in my nextbooke, and therefore will buta litete touch them as this time, bur formy beginning or proofe of this mater the better to encourage litele men to take heare of grace, and not to difmaied by the high lookes of a tall man, nor feared by their great bragges, there is an old faying, gecth I nener $\int_{\text {aw }}$, faith the pronerb, a little man borrow a floole to breake a tall mass bead, and this prouerb runneth throughout the world, as the corrant through the Gulfe which our Marrinors doe fpeake of in the way to wards the Indies.

Againe, it is not common to fee a tall man valo-
rous and skilfull withall, but generally, little men are valorous although not skilfull, now if the tall man be skilfull, the little man mult for his aduantage, fuffer the tall man to proffer him play firf, but then vpon the little mans defence prefently, with the fame motion fleppe forth with foote and hand, and fo by a quicke anfwere endanger the tall man : now if the tall man be not skilfull, whereby to fteppe forth with his hand and foote togerher, when hee makech play to the litele man, then the little man skilfull herein, getecth'three foore at the leaff by anfwering eucry affault that the tall man maketh by ftepping forth with the foote and hand as beforefaid: but this muftbe thy helpe and this muft be thy care, though a little man alwaies fuffer the talliman to makeplay firft, elpecially if he be skiltull, and then be nimble with the anfwere, ftepping it home with thy foote and hand together, according to my directions, following the firft picture, for what thou wanteft in reach, is goten by thy comming.

There is another old faying going thus, a tall man is fo faire a marke, that a liteleman skilfullcannot miffe him, anda hore man is fol litete and fo nimble, that if he haue but a litele skill, a tall man cannothit him for with his weapons, and a good guard in a manner hee will couer all his whole body with his weapons. Lo this is ny opinion, I doe not fayall other are of my minde, for there is an old faying gocth thus, fo many men, fo many mindes, what other mens opinions is, I haue net to doe withall, but this I can fay of my owne knowledge, that I haue not knowen one tall man amongft twenty, that hath good skill, nor fufficient valour anfwerable vnto
their

The Scboole of Defence.
183
their ftatures, for tall men are more fearcfull then men of a ancane flature, for thate feene the criall both in the warres and in fingle combat; yet take me not up before Ibec downe, for I doc not here condemne all tall men of perfonage, for fo I thould greatly oucr-fhoote my felfe, and greatly wrong many tall men of fature and vallour, and alfo of good refolution, but yer ali of them are not fo, whet. fore what I hauc faid, it is to encourage little men of meane ftature, hauing skill not to feare any man yp. on goodoccafion, thofe that fpend their daies with. out practifing skill in weapons, fo that when they are wronged they fall to wifhing: oh I would to God I had skill in my weapon, for then would I anfwere the wrong that fuch a man, and fuch 2 manhath done mee, but I could wifh fuch vnskilfull to liue quiet, and not to maintaine any quarrell, left they loofe their liues for want of experience, as many of them haue done.
Scholler. Now'as you hauc promifed me, I pray you let ine heare your opinion concerning the oddes beeweenc a frong man of frength, and a little or a weake man of itature and ftrength.
Mafer. Then this briefely is my opinion, a frong man hath great oddes at the gripe, or in a clofe at any blunt weapon, but vpon the point of a harpe weapon, in fighe a frong man hath finall or no oddes atall of the little or weake man, wherefore I would not hane a litte man bee afraide of a tall or ouergrowneman, no although he were farre bigger then a man, for in performance of any things to be done with weapons, there is no more to bee found in the beft of them of great fagure vpon triall, then is in

## 184 <br> The Schoole of Defence.

the ordinary men, or then is in a little or weake man, nay many times the little or weake man doth as good or better feruice in the face of the enemy vpon the point of the weapon then the taller mandoth, for although his fature be fmall, yet commonly a litule mans heart is bigge.

## Obfernations for a Scholler or any ot ber.

What length thy weapons fhould be.
How you hould button your foiles for your praatife.
An cafie way to weapon thy felfe at time of need.
Let thy Rapier or Sword be foure foote at the leaft, and thy Dagger two foote, for it is better haue the'Dagger too long then too hort, and rather hard then foft, for a hort dagger may deceiue a skilfull man his defence, either of blow or thruf: I haue often knowen $a$ fofe dagger cut in twaine witha Rapier.
Let thy Staffe of practife be feauen or eight foote, and better, button both thy foiles and thy flaues before the practife with them, for otherwife the vnskilfull may thruft out one anothers eyes, yea although there was no harme meant, yet an cye may belof except the occafion be preuented.

To make your buttons take wooll or focks, and wrappe it round in leather fo bigge as a Tennis-ball, then make a notch within halfe an inch of your woodden foilc or faffe, but if it be an Iron foile, then let there be an Iron button riueted on the point, fo broad as two pence, and then take your button being made as beforefaid, and fec it on the end of

The Scboolc of Defence.
185
your Staffe or Foile likewife, and then take lenther and draw hard vpon it, and binde it with Shooma-kers-ends or parck-thread in the notch, and another leather vpon that againe, for one leather may bee worne out with a litele practifc.

Now if thou bunc a quarrell and willing to anfwere, and being not firriifhed with a Rapier, then take a cudgell of what length thou wilt thy felfc, and make a fhoulder within a handfull of the ende of it by cutting him halfe way through, and there binde the haft of thy knife, and fo the fhoulder will kecpehim from flipping backe, and this is as fure and as fearcfull, and as good as a Rapier to cncounter againft a Rapier and Dagger, or a Sword and Dagger, fo that you hauc a clofe hilted Dagger: likewife you may tie 2 point at the But-end of the Cudgell, to put in thy finger that thy Cudgell flippe not out of thy hand: this weapon 1 haue made good proofe of, bur ir was in another Country, where I could get no other weapon to my minde.

## The Schoole of Defence.

## $C_{\text {hap. }}$ XII.

## This Chapter fieneth the feuerall kinde of meapons which are to be plaied at.



Ow one thing more vnto the vulgar fort concerning the feuerall forts of weapons, becaufe vnto many it feemeth To ftrange, that if a Manter of Defence fhould rell them that he can ceach thee skill at Fence at twelue feuerall lorts of weapons, they will ftraight-way fay, that there are not fo many: now for their further fatisfaction, they fhall heare the diuifion of more then twenty forts of weapons, which Mafters of chis Noble att of Defence, are, or, elfe ought to be expert therein, like vuto a skilfuli Cooke which can of one fort of meate make diuerfe difies, or like the curning Phyfition, who can with a hearbe being diuerfcly compounded, make it ferve to diuers purpofes and vfes: to which effect my meaning is, that an expert Mafter of Defence can of one kinde of weapon make many, as by this fequell following fhall appeare, and all thefe weapons haue beene plaied at in Challenges, here in Englanàat feucrall times.
of the Sword are deriused thefe
feaucs.
The two hand Sword.
The Back-fword.
Sword and Dagger.
Sword and Buckler.
Short Sword and Dagger.
The fhort Sword and
Gantict. fword.

The Baflard Sword, the which Sword is fomething fhorter then a long Sword, and yet longer then a Short-

> Nows with the Rapier feanem
> more.


The fingle Rapier.
The cafe of Rapiers.
TheRapier and Cloake.
The Rapier and Targer. The Rapier and Ganclet.
The Rapicr and Pike.

The Dutch Fauchin.
The Poll-axe.
The Battel-2xe.
The two Daggers.

The Halfe-pikc.
The Long-pike.
The Long-ftafic.
The Quarter.ftaffe.
The Welch-hooke or Bill.
The Haulbert.
The Rapier and Dagger againft Short-fword and Dagger.
Likewifc Rapier and Dagger, or Sword and Dagger againk 2 Staffe or Haulbert.
Allo the Staffe againf a Flail.
Ec 2
Back-

| 188 | The Sch | of Defence. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | inft fword | Single Rapier againft Rapier and Dagger. |

Now my fecond booke which is already in hand fhall thew my indgement, and the chiefeft rules according vnto my practife at all thefe feucrall weapons, if death doe not preuent me before I have accomplifhed my pretence, yet for doube thereof, the defence of the Staffe with a Rapier and Dagger, or with Sword and Dagger I will giue thee a litrle direction, which being practifed it may fead thee as much as thy life is worth. I doe this the rather, and for becaule that the Staffe is a weapon which many men doc carry, and with skill it hath great oddes againf either of the two aforefaid weapons, but yer becaufe euerie man which carrieth a weapon, hath the perfect skill in that weapon which hee carriech, buradmit that he hath good skill, yet in knowing the beft Defence, it may prenent thee from a danger.
Now thou mu! remember if thou bee charged vpon with a Staffe, fuddenly fummon vp thy wits int that which before hand thou hant learned for thy Defence, and thinke this with thy felfe; I ann now to encounter againft a Staffe: why then thus frame thy guarde, put thy Dagger acroffe on the in-fide of thy Rapier or Sword, and let the croffe bee made wishin halfe a foote of thy Rapier or Swordhilt, bearing yp both thy hilts cuen fo high as thy cheeke, looking with both shy eyes betwixt both thy weapons.

Thus

Thie Schoole of Defence.
189
Thusbeing guarded, it may bee, that thine ene. mie will charge thee with a thruft, forbecaufe thy breaf will feene moft open to him, the which and if hee doe, then turne downe the point of thy Rapicr and Sword, and with thy Dagger force him downe which will bee a ftronger Detence then with one alone : and thus by turning downe both thy points together, frike thine enemies thruift of the Staffe towards thy right fide : Loc, thus doe ine with both thy weapons; then will thine caemies thrult paffe cleare vider thy right arme, but neycher with the Sword nor yet with the Dagger alone; the thrame of a faffe is not to be defended withour greater dan. ger then with both of them, as beforc hath beene rehealfed.
Now and if thine enemie doe chaunce to charge the with a blow, thereby thinking to driue both thy Rapier and Dagger, or Sword and Dagger vito thy head: For I hauc knowne many to be of that opinion with me. But the blowe of a Staffe, ftrucke arthe head, may be defended with the fingle Sword or Rapier according vinto the Backe-fivord rule: but to beare thy Dagger with thy Rapier or Sword, that is the monf fure way, keeping both thy points vpright, andfo to beare them towards the righefide, or to thy left fide, according as chou fhalt perceine thine enemie charge thee.

Thus will hecre conclude and make an end with this fhord dire Ction concerning shis one weapon, becaufe 1 hanc froken fomething already toucling and concerning this purpofe, although it be not to ample as nowit is, and yet heereafter (by Almightic Gods good helpe) I will (fpeake more atdarge here-

Ef 3
of,

## ${ }_{1} 82$ <br> The Schoole of Defence.

of, this onely feructh but to rowze vp your firites, that you may the better prepare your felfe for the next. The horfe flarteth at the Spurre, fo (in loue) Ipricke you forward in this commendable Art : and fo, I hope, that this Whetfone will make your blunt Wittes fonewhat fharper : Golde is not put in the fire to be confumed, but to bee purified; euen fo I
hope, the trauell which I haue taken heerein. will not make you to proue worfe, but rather fomewhat the better
in allgoodnes.
[***]

FINIS.


## My farewell so Plimouth.

MOS T noble plimonth, the grear loute which I found in thee amonge both rich and poore, now drawes me backe againe to gilue thee a kind and heartie farewell, and yet at this time I yeeld but onlie chanks as my pay-Miftreffe, but yet I defire not to die indebred, withoue making fome better recompence to fome of my ciniefef well-willers and friends, if iny abilitie proone anfwerable to my mind: for a Chriftmaffe banquet may be requited at Eafter, and fo when I am better able I will make amends; but yer me thinks I hould not leauc fo famous a towne with fuch a threed-bare fare-well, buthere may a queftion arife of thofe which know it not, why it fhould be more famous then any other towne? which I will tell thee, fet her wealth and riches afide, yet for thas onlie not the like towne in this land of her bigueffe, I meane fo long as the wars continted, the is alfo famous for her ftrong forcification, but more famous for her entertainment; for twetw, ce bouland frangers haue had vpon a fuddaine good and fufficient lod. ging, and other neecffaries; yea, whecther they haue had mony, or $n$ nt, bur moft tamous of all for her gallaut harbours, for a thoufand hippes may fafely ride, and all within halfe a league of the Towne; it is the chiefe arriuing place for all the South and Weafe Countries: and in a word, the onely Key of England. In the time of warres $P$ limmout $h$ flowed, as it were, with milke and hony, and then it fourifhed with

Gallans

The Schoole of Defence.
Gallants great fore, tracing the freetes fo thicke in fwarmes like as at wefminfter in a Ternue cime, and although many of them went away without bidding theefarewell; yet I will, as it were, bite thee by the finger, becaufe thou fhalt remember me, for if it bee not poffible for the mother to forget her childe, then (without all peraduenture) I Thallneucr forget thee: Once thouwert a golden place, but now an yron or a leaden towne, Imeane, in a manner turned vpfide downe, which makes me fory, and many more; but yet be of good cheare, for after a forme cometh a calme: plucke vp thy heart, and let it not gricucthec to fee a King content with his kingdome; for if it were not fo, it inould be fo.

Although of late thy purfe hath had a frong purgation, which maketh fome of you to fhrinke vp the thoulders like a Spaniard, and hang downe the head like a bull-rufh, and repenting your felues, that you had oot kept the goods better which you got in time of warres; and this mee thinketh I heare fome of you fay your felues: Oh what a foole was I that tooke not Time by the fore-locke before he did paffe away, bue mutt now catch at her balde pate, where is nothing to holdeby : let it not grictie thee, for if thou hadis thofe goods againe, they would confume like butter againft the Sunne: for as it is not poffible to keepe the Indian beefe fweete two dayes, with all the fale in the world, no more is the goods got by the warres to be of any continuance, no although a man had them that were as wife as wit could make them, butitfeldome commeth into fuch mens hands, but rather vnto fuch as refemble Rufus the Ruffian which had God pictured on the in fide ofhis Target, and the diuel on
the out-frde, with this poefie on thein-fide, If thow wilt not baue mee, the otber fball: as not caring whether he went to God or the diuell: many fuch tellows attend vpon the fortune of the wars, making hatiocke and fpoile, and many times murthering thofe that neuer meant hurt vnto them nor their king for whom they fight: for yet fuch, as I fay, make no confcience, but as the Proucrb gocth, Robbe Peter and pay Paul', accounting all fifh which conmeth to the net, getting ir by hooke or by crooke, fome out of Iudas bag, and fome out of the diucls budget: for I haue fienea man of warre, as hungry vpon a poore Fifherman, as they would be on a Carioke, as thofe that haue feene men of warre, hauc feene how vnconfcionably Rufus the ruffian and his fellows hame dealt with thofe poor Fifhermen whofe whole eftate, for maintenanceboth for their wifes, and children, did relie vpon the gains, which the poore men by great paines did get with their bote, yet fo hard-hearted haue thefe men of war beene vnto thofe poore Fifhers, that neither for the teares of the olde men, which for gricfe would beate their heads againft the fhippe fide, yet neither this nor the pitrifull complaint of the yong men, for all their yeelding and kneeling, yet would they take av way their fifh, their meat and drinke, and their cloths from their backes, their failes from their yards, yee not fo contented, butin the end fet them arhore, and either finke their boate or burne him aboord the man of warre, to the vtter vodoing of many a poore man; now iudge whether it be poofible, that thefe goods fo gotten can profper, for they are gotten with no better a conficience then a Atrumper geteeth her money; and therefore it will profper no better : for looke

Ff
what

The Schoole of Defence.
what a frumper getreth of twenty, thee fiendech it vpon one which hee doth loue and affect aboue all the reft : euen fo, many fouldiers and men of warre, what fooyles they ger, they are not long in fpending of it: but as the Prouerbe goeth, Light come, and light goe : ill got, and wickedly fpent : for they put it into a bottomleffe bagge, which neuer holdes thrift long.

Loe, thus my opinion you haue heard, and I yeeld yp my verdid thus, That the goods which is goten by the warres, is ill gotten : and hee which hath but one peny worth of ill gotten goods in his houfe, God will fend a curfe vpon all the reft : then let vs pray for peace, rather then warres, and euery man lcarue to labor with his hands, to maintaine fpending: wherefore, fee thy wittes and thy hands to labour, and turne oucr the leate $e_{3}$ I meane, learne a new leffon, for looke what is gotten with labour, will bee fpent with difcretion, or elfe kept with warineffe; and fo I grecte not oncly Plimmouth alone, but allDenon(hire and Cornewall, with as many kinde commendations,as it is poffible for my Penne to expreffe,and all

Iproteft with true loue from my heditr, and fol leaue you, with a thou-
fand Farewells to
youall.
rour cuer-lauing friewd,
Iosipa Svietnam.

The Seboole of Defence.
195


The Cauthors Conclusfon.

NOw (gentle Reader) I doe intreate the so beare with miny rudeneffe, Iam no Scholler, for I do proteft I neuer went to Schoole fix monechs in all mylife, nor I neucr did write one line of this Bookeby the direction of any other teacher; nor did I cuer aske the opinion of any other Profeffor, fince the time that I was firft taught, and that was when I was yong; and then I had fonc of my skilin London, and fome in other places, where it was my chance to trauell. Againe, I did write this Booke by peecemeale; for after I firt beganne, Ileft off writing a weeke, and fomerimes a moneth together, before I writ againe; and fo forgerting oftentimes what I had written before. Againe,fome chiefe notes I bane left out, which I thoughr I had written of before: : wherefore they flall follow in my fecond Book. Now (Gentle Reader) for thy benefic I haue begume, if there be any other that find fault, and cannot amend it, let them indere of their wit that heare them talke: but if I hall heare thofe my felfe fpeake againot this Booke which doe not goe about to anneud it, then if they were as good as George a Greene, yet would I not befcared with deedes, much leffe with words, but will anfiver them, not oncly with words, but with weapons, for this Booke was printed in hatte, at the carneft tequeft of fome friends of minc. Alfo I wrote is to profite thofe that can not come where Teachers are : and againe, there are few which teach this Arte
that doe trauell, the reafon is, as I thinke, they are litde fet by when they come into the country amongt you: Now it is not enough to have this booke in thy pocket, but to exercife thy body with all, that thereby thou main haue the perfeat skill thereof in thy head, and fo praying thee to excufe me in the groffe penning of it, and beare with me a little the rather in that I was neuer Scholler, as I faid before, and as it plainely appeareth by the groffe penning of it, but my folly hetein fhalbe vpon my head, yet I pray thee let it paffe a little the rather, and giue it your good word, for becaufe $I$ haue taken paines in hope to doe thee good, bue not for any gaine (I protent before God) but onely becaufel know it fo laudable an exercife, and more commendable then any other, wee fee daily thefe bookes fcoffed at, which were made by learned and good Schollers, for if there were one which excell ten thoufand', yet cuery one will not fpeake well of him, but he thall haue in fight of his teeth back-biters and fault-finders, much more my felfe being the left of ten thoufand muft not flabbe cuery one which will fpeake in difcommendations, both of me and my Booke, but if I may efcape handfomely from fcoffes and mockes of fuch Idiates which are vfually contemnors of fuch laudable exercifes : then I accompt that I haue made a good hand.
Forherein I haue fhowen but my owne opinion and iudgement in fetting out this booke, now I doe notfay it is other mens opinions: for nonebut my felfe was counfell, nor had any hand in this matter; therefore I make no queftion that other men are of other mindes,yer obreruing thefe rules, and bearing
thefe
thefeleffons in memory, they may ferice thy turne afwell as they have ferued mine all the daies of my life hetherto : buryet belenue whiat you liff ofit, and leaue what you like not, now if in my good incention and true meaning I bec vadeferuedly wronged, I thinke it wilbe by nono but fich pot-companions which cudgell there wits and beate their braines to fhift for mony to that vee which ofeen-times makes the fonne fo hardy as to call his father knauc, or worfe.

Now if my booke doe come vato the view of any fuch, I will impure it vinto the Idleneffe of their braine, or vnto the fitefulneffe of an enuious minde, which will never commend nor allow any other mansman-hood, opinion or iudgement to bec fo good as their owne, not much like vito the proude Pharizec, who faid that his life in all refpect was better then any other, now miftake mee not, for Idoe not fay fo, becaufe you thould thinke that this worke cannot bee mended, for it is farre from my thought to thinke that this booke is fo wel penned as to be without fault, or to pleafe all, neither is it fo wel as it might haue becne, if my leffure would hane ferued meto amend fome faulss which I know in it my felfe, indeed, I muft confeffe that there are many in this land of this noble and worthy art befides my felfe, which mighth have taken this matter in hand, bocaufe many of them are more fit both for wifdome and learning, but I fee they haue not gone abour it, wherefore if any blame me for fhewing my good will, I hope thofe which hane knowen mee and feene my behauiour wil anfwere for me with reafonable fpeech
againd
againft thofe which obiedt againft me: no, if reafon will notrule them, bue like Balaams Affe, will friue againft weapons, then I pray you referre the quarrell vnto my felfe, and let me anfwere my owne wrong which I have done them heerein, for I had rather loofe my life in defence of my reputation and credit, if therewere fuch a danger in fighting, then my friend Thould loofe one drop of bloud in my quarrell:therefore while I am liuing, wrong menot, for hee which fighteth for another, feekech his owne defruction,
fo praying you if I haue offended any, let me anfwere it my felfe while I am liuing, for when I ann dead hee deales vn-
clarifianlike, that will a-
bufe me : and fo
1 reft,

## Thine euer to belpe tbe bereafter in mobat Imay,



Thy friend,

Iosapa Svatnamo

